



Soil Association Organic Standards for  
Great Britain  
Farming and growing

Version 1: published on 23 December 2021

## Contents

Introduction.....	4
Guide to using these standards.....	5
1.0 General standards for organic farming and growing.....	7
1.1 Scope.....	7
1.2 Principles.....	8
1.3 Becoming Soil Association certified.....	10
1.4 Your obligations when certified.....	13
1.5 Inspections.....	16
1.6 Non-compliance with the standards.....	17
1.7 Record keeping.....	20
1.8 General labelling.....	26
1.9 Making claims on your labels.....	36
1.10 Labelling in specific scenarios.....	36
1.11 Preserving organic integrity.....	37
1.12 Cleaning.....	42
1.13 Pest control.....	45
1.14 Transport, dispatch and receipt of goods.....	49
1.15 Storage of products.....	51
1.16 Packaging.....	53
2.0 Standards for organic land and crops.....	58
2.1 Converting land and crops to organic production.....	58
2.2 Managing organic and non-organic enterprises.....	65
2.3 Environmental management and conservation.....	67
2.4 Managing your soil.....	70
2.5 Fertilisers and soil conditioners.....	71
2.6 Controlling pests and disease.....	79
2.7 Seeds, plant propagation and potted plants.....	84
2.8 Standards for mushroom production.....	89
2.9 Additional standards for watercress production.....	90
2.10 Standards for wild harvesting.....	92
2.11 Additional standards for woodland.....	95
3.0 Standards for organic livestock production.....	99
3.1 Converting your animals to organic.....	99
3.2 Sourcing livestock.....	102
3.3 Keeping organic and non-organic livestock.....	107
3.4 Keeping animals healthy and treating disease.....	108
3.5 Animal welfare management.....	115
3.6 Outdoor access and grazing.....	120

<b>3.7 Standards for pigs' outdoor access</b> .....	125
3.8 Housing livestock.....	127
3.9 Housing standards for pigs and cattle .....	134
3.10 Feeding livestock.....	135
3.11 Transporting and handling your animals .....	147
3.12 Standards for poultry .....	150
3.13 Additional standards for pullet rearing .....	163
3.14 Additional standards for poultry breeding flocks.....	166
3.15 Additional standards for poultry hatcheries .....	168
3.16 Additional standards for organic deer.....	171
3.17 Beekeeping.....	181

## Introduction

The Soil Association standards put the principles of organic production into practice. These organic standards encompass *EU Regulations 834/2007, 889/2008 and 1235/2008*. These regulations were the legal basis for the control of organic farming, food processing and organic labelling within the EU until 31<sup>st</sup> December 2021 and have been retained in the UK for implementation in Great Britain (GB), as set out in *The Organic Production and Control (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019*. Operators based in Northern Ireland (NI) should use our EU standards which are available on our website.

The Soil Association has higher organic standards than required by the GB Organic Regulations in key areas: delivering the highest levels of animal welfare, protecting human and animal health, safeguarding the environment and protecting the interests of organic consumers. These reflect our mission and vision as a charitable organisation.

Each standard has a reference which tells you which part of the GB Organic Regulation it refers to, or whether it is a Soil Association higher **standard**. **Each Soil Association higher standard is accompanied by a 'Why?' box which explains the rationale behind the standard and why we expect our licensees to go further than required by the GB Organic Regulation.**

**A 'competent authority' is** authorised to make rulings on organic legislation. In GB the competent authority is Defra or one of its devolved agencies who have delegated some controls to accredited organic certification bodies. The certification body that is appointed by the Soil Association to inspect and certify to Soil Association organic standards in the UK is Soil Association Certification. Throughout these standards **'your certification body' refers to Soil Association Certification**. For further definitions, please refer to the separate [Glossary](#) document on our website.

The GB Organic Regulation does not cover processing of non-food crops such as for textiles and cosmetic products and certification of inputs.

The Soil Association offers standards for areas not covered by the GB Organic Regulation. These include:

- [textiles](#)
- [cosmetics](#)

Please contact us if you would like more information or visit [our website](#).

## Guide to using these standards

The standards are listed in the column on the left, with a white background for GB Organic Regulation standards and a blue background for Soil Association higher standards. Where necessary, guidance is provided in the column on the right, with a grey background to differentiate it from the standard.

- Each standard is referenced with the relevant article/s of the GB Organic Regulation or shows that it is a Soil Association higher standard.
- Each Soil Association higher standard has a Why? box to explain its purpose and rationale.

**R** This symbol shows where you need to keep a record to demonstrate that you are meeting the standard. The specific requirements for the records will be detailed in the standard or guidance.

**I** This symbol shows where additional relevant information is provided.

**S** This symbol shows where an extra sourcing requirement applies for processors using an organic product that is not certified to Soil Association standards. If you would like to know what the sourcing requirements are, you can view our annex on [Sourcing Organic Ingredients](#). Our [Working Together for Better Sourcing](#) webpage explains the challenges surrounding the sourcing of organic ingredients and how we are working with others to address them.

### What is guidance?

Guidance provides supplementary information to the standards which explains how compliance will be assessed. It tells you where and how to provide the information required, for example through record keeping or demonstration at your inspection. The guidance may also provide examples of actions and measures to help you demonstrate compliance, and links to best practice guides and information.

EXAMPLE Standards	EXAMPLE Guidance
<p><b>3.4.16 Withdrawal periods</b>                      If you treat your animals with any allopathic veterinary medicinal products you must wait twice the legal withdrawal period as referred to in Article 11 of <i>Directive 2001/82/EC</i>, and no less than 48 hours, before you can sell your livestock products as organic.  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 24(5)</i></p>	<p>You must have an effective system in place to ensure that treated animals or their products are not sold for human consumption in the United Kingdom.</p> <p><b>R</b> Both statutory and non-statutory medicinal products.</p> <p>If veterinary medicinal products are prescribed under the Cascade, you must implement twice the withdrawal period as legally required under the Cascade.</p> <p><b>I</b> If there is no suitable medicinal product available in the UK to treat a condition in a particular animal, you may use a non-licensed veterinary medicinal product.</p>

The R symbol shows which records you need to keep to demonstrate that you meet this standard.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 24(5)*

The relevant part of the GB Organic Regulation is referenced here.

The I symbol shows where additional relevant information is provided.

EXAMPLE Standards	EXAMPLE Guidance
<p>2.5.4 The use of peat is restricted You may only use peat in propagating media.</p> <p><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p> <p>Soil Association higher standards are clearly shown.</p>	<p><b>I</b> We are aiming to phase out the use of peat by 2025 at the latest. We will be reviewing this standard in 2019 with a view to further reducing peat use or phasing it out completely. To prepare for this, we encourage you to use sustainable alternatives to peat where possible.</p> <p>We are conducting trials to test peat-free alternatives. If you would like to take part in the trials please contact a member of the Standards Team: <a href="mailto:standards@soilassociation.org">standards@soilassociation.org</a></p>
<p>Peat is a precious resource that can take thousands of years to form. Peatlands are important habitats for a wide range of species and play a key role in preventing floods and storing carbon. The extraction and burning of peat releases large amounts of carbon dioxide which contributes to global warming. We believe it is important to protect our peatlands and are supporting the development of reliable alternatives to peat for all propagation purposes. We continue to allow the use of peat for propagating while peat-free alternatives are being developed and trialled to prove their reliability for the commercial production of certain crops. We also prohibit the use of peat as bedding material for livestock production see standard 3.8.10.</p>	

Why?

Each Soil Association higher standard has a Why? box to explain its purpose and rationale.

## 1.0 General standards for organic farming and growing

### 1.1 Scope

#### Standards

##### 1.1.1 Scope of the standards

1. The standards in this document set out the rules that apply for all stages of production, preparation and distribution in order for products to be labelled and marketed as organic. These organic farming and growing standards cover:
  - a) crop production (including wild harvesting)
  - b) livestock husbandry
  - c) vegetative propagating material and seeds for cultivating
  - d) yeasts used for feed
2. These standards contain detailed production rules for the following livestock species:
  - a) bovine, including buffalo and bison,
  - b) equines
  - c) pigs
  - d) sheep
  - e) goats
  - f) poultry
  - g) bees
3. For livestock species not referred to in these standards, we can in certain cases, apply the standards for similar species to their production.
4. You must comply with these standards if you are involved in activities, at any stage in the production, processing, preparation and distribution in relation to these organic products.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 1(1)(2)(3); Art. 8*

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 1(1)(2); Art. 7*

#### Guidance

Please contact us if you want to use our standards for livestock species not referred to in this document.

If you are unsure whether the activity you are carrying out requires certification, please [contact us](#).

For standards regarding food and drink, seed and livestock feed processing please refer to the food and drink standards, and feed processing standards, on our [website](#).

1.1.2 Products from hunting and fishing of wild animals  
 Products from the hunting and fishing of wild animals cannot be sold as organic.  
*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 1(2)*

## 1.2 Principles

### What is this chapter about?

This section details the principles on which these organic standards are based. **Organic is a 'whole system' approach to farming and food production.** It recognises the close interrelationships between all parts of the production system from the soil to the consumer. This comprehensive set of organic principles guides our work and our standards.

### Standards

#### 1.2.1 General principles of organic production

Your production system must meet the following principles and objectives:

1. To produce food of high quality and in sufficient quantity by the use of processes that do not harm the environment, human health, plant health or animal health and welfare.
2. To work within natural systems and cycles at all levels, from the soil to plants and animals.
3. To maintain the long-term fertility and biological activity of soils.
4. To treat livestock ethically, meeting their species-specific physiological and behavioural needs.
5. To respect regional, environmental, climatic and geographic differences and the appropriate practices that have evolved in response to them.
6. To maximise the use of renewable resources and recycling.
7. To design and manage organic systems which make the best use of natural resources and ecology to prevent the need for external inputs. Where this fails or where external inputs are required, the use of external inputs is

### Guidance



<p>limited to organic, natural or naturally-derived substances.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8. To limit the use of chemically synthesised inputs to situations where appropriate alternative management practices do not exist, or natural or organic inputs are not available, or where alternative inputs would contribute to unacceptable environmental impacts.</li> <li>9. To exclude the use of soluble mineral fertilisers.</li> <li>10. To foster biodiversity and protect sensitive habitats and landscape features.</li> <li>11. To minimise pollution and waste.</li> <li>12. To use preventative and precautionary measures and risk assessment when appropriate.</li> <li>13. To exclude the use of GMOs and products produced from or by GMOs with the exception of veterinary medicinal products.</li> <li>14. To sustainably use products from fisheries.</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 3; Art. 4</i></p>	
<p><b>1.2.2 Specific principles for organic farming</b></p> <p>In addition to the overall organic principles set out in standard 1.2.1, organic farming must be based on the following specific principles:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. the maintenance and enhancement of soil life and natural soil fertility, soil stability and soil biodiversity preventing and combating soil compaction and soil erosion, and the nourishing of plants primarily through the soil ecosystem</li> <li>2. the minimisation of the use of non-renewable resources and off-farm inputs</li> <li>3. the recycling of wastes and by-products of plant and animal origin as inputs in plant and livestock production</li> <li>4. taking account of the local or regional ecological balance when taking production decisions</li> <li>5. the maintenance of animal health by encouraging the natural immunological defence of animals and the selection of appropriate breeds and husbandry practices</li> </ol>	

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. the maintenance of plant health by preventative measures, such as the choice of appropriate species and varieties resistant to pests and diseases, appropriate crop rotations, mechanical and physical methods and the protection of natural enemies of pests</li> <li>7. the practice of site-adapted and land-related livestock production</li> <li>8. the observance of a high level of animal welfare respecting species-specific needs</li> <li>9. the production of products of organic livestock from animals that have been raised on organic holdings since birth or hatching and throughout their life</li> <li>10. the choice of breeds having regard to the capacity of animals to adapt to local conditions, their vitality and their resistance to disease or health problems</li> <li>11. the feeding of livestock with organic feed composed of agricultural ingredients from organic farming and of natural non-agricultural substances</li> <li>12. the application of animal husbandry practices, which enhance the immune system and strengthen the natural defence against diseases, in particular including regular exercise and access to open air areas and pasture where appropriate</li> <li>13. the exclusion of rearing artificially induced polyploid animals</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 5</i></p>	
---	--

<h3 style="color: #4F81BD;">1.3 Becoming Soil Association certified</h3>	
<h4 style="color: #4F81BD;">What is this chapter about?</h4>	
<p>This chapter explains which activities require certification and how you can certify your business to the Soil Association standards.</p>	
<b>Standards</b>	<b>Guidance</b>
<h4 style="color: #4F81BD;">1.3.1 Certifying your business</h4> <p>To become certified to these organic standards you must have a certification contract with an independent, accredited</p>	<p>In GB, Defra is the competent authority and has delegated some controls to accredited organic certification bodies. The certification body that is appointed</p>

certification body and comply with all relevant organic standards for your organic activity.  
*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 27(1)(4); Art. 28(1)*

by the Soil Association to inspect and certify to Soil Association organic standards in the UK is Soil Association Certification.

**1.3.2 Activities that require certification**

1. In GB all stages of the organic supply chain must hold organic certification.
2. Your business must be certified if you produce, process, package, store, label, import or export, include wholesaling, storage and warehousing, acting as the first consignee for imported products and any other activities that require the physical or financial ownership of organic products or ingredients.
3. In GB you do not need certification if you only sell organic products directly to the final consumer or user **provided that** you do not produce, prepare, store organic products other than in relation to the point of sale **or** import such products **or** have not contracted out such activities. In other countries certification may be required for these activities.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 27(3); Art. 28(1); Art. 28(2)*

Without adequate certification at each stage of the supply chain, the products may lose their organic status.

Examples of businesses not requiring certification in the GB include supermarkets and mass caterers serving food e.g. restaurants, cafes, catering companies.

If you are unsure whether the activity you are carrying out requires certification, please [contact us](#).

For more information on the certification requirements for importing and exporting please refer to section 6.8 in the food and drink standards.

**1.3.3 Organic certificate**

1. You are not allowed to sell products with the Soil Association symbol or with reference to organic without a valid certificate that shows that your activity complies with these organic standards.
2. Certificates are issued once Soil Association Certification has inspected your organic activity and they are satisfied that your activity meets organic standards. The certificate will list all your certified activities and the crops, livestock and/or products you are certified to produce, process and/or sell as organic.
3. The certificate may be in electronic format.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 29(1)(3)*

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 63(1)(d); Art. 68*

Soil Association Certification will issue licensees with the following documentation:

- An annual certificate with valid from and to dates, your name, address and licence number
- A Trading Schedule with your certified products, activities and status
- For producers, an Information Schedule listing your licensed enterprises, holdings and fields.

If you are a farmer with land or crops in conversion, these will be shown as **'product under conversion to organic farming'** on your Trading Schedule. Once they have gone through the relevant conversion period they will be shown as **'organic' on your Trading Schedule and you can start trading as organic**. If your **livestock are shown as 'converted breeding stock' they cannot be traded as organic**.

Annual renewal of your licence is linked to you continuing to meet the relevant standards and payment of the relevant renewal fee. Within a year of your original application date we will send you a renewal invoice.

### Soil Association Certification

Since 1973 Soil Association Certification Limited (Soil Association Certification) has certified farm enterprises, foods and other products as organic. Soil Association Certification is a wholly owned subsidiary of the Soil Association charity. We are registered with Defra to certify organic food production and processing under the terms of the Organic Production and Control (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019.

Certification bodies must be able to prove that they have the expertise, equipment, infrastructure and sufficient number of suitable qualified and experienced staff to carry out the task of certification. Soil Association Certification Limited is accredited and subject to an annual inspection by the United Kingdom Accreditation Service (UKAS) for GB licensees.

To uphold organic integrity and in order to work efficiently, certification bodies are obliged to communicate and exchange relevant certification information about their licensees to control authorities and other certification bodies. This includes when:

- a) licensees change certification bodies
- b) non-compliances are found
- c) organic status of a products is lost, and
- d) certification is withdrawn.

### Information

If you are interested in certifying your business, contact Soil Association Certification via:

Our website: [www.soilassociation.org/certification/get-in-touch/](http://www.soilassociation.org/certification/get-in-touch/)

Email: [GoOrganic@soilassociation.org](mailto:GoOrganic@soilassociation.org)

Phone: 0117 914 2406

Post: Spear House, 51 Victoria Street, Bristol, BS1 6AD

## 1.4 Your obligations when certified

### What is this chapter about?

This chapter explains your responsibilities and obligations when certified to these organic standards.

#### Standards

##### 1.4.1 Description of your activities

1. Before starting your organic enterprise, you must describe how you will comply with these organic standards. If you make any changes to your activity you must update your certification body accordingly.
2. You must include a full description of your premises, units and activities including:
  - a) fields and their status (organic, non-organic in conversion)
  - b) the date of the last input of any agrochemicals, artificial fertilisers and other materials we do not allow for each field or area
  - c) facilities used for receipt of goods, storage and where applicable facilities for processing, packaging and labelling, and
  - d) procedures used for transporting products.
3. For livestock production you must also include:
  - a) livestock buildings
  - b) grazing areas and open-air runs
  - c) facilities for storing manure
  - d) premises for storage, packaging and processing of livestock, livestock products, raw materials and inputs
  - e) a plan of your livestock management
  - f) a plan for spreading manure agreed with your certification body together with a full description of the areas given over to crop production, and
  - g) where appropriate, as regards the spreading of manure, any written arrangements with other holdings.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 63(1); Art. 64; Art. 70; Art. 74*

#### Guidance

Some of this information will be collected as part of the application process.

You must let us know if and when you plan to expand into new areas. For example, if you wish to add land, keep new livestock species or enterprises, or start a box scheme or start to pack or process food or feed. Depending on what changes are made, we might need to update your certificates and you may need an additional inspection or licence.

Livestock management plan templates can be found on our [website](#).

<p><b>1.4.2 Contracted operations</b></p> <p>If you contract out your organic activity, in part or whole, to a third party, the information in 1.4.1 must also include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) a list of the subcontractors, including their activities and the certification body or authority that they are certified by</li> <li>b) a written agreement by the subcontractors that their operation will comply with the control measures required as part of organic certification, and</li> <li>c) details of all the practical measures taken to ensure and demonstrate full traceability of products.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 28(1)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 86</i></p>	<p>This would include contractors used for agricultural work, such as harvesting, spraying, seed cleaning or storage.</p> <p>To comply with control measures contractors will be required to supply copies of any records of the work they have carried out for example field records, cleaning records of any storage areas or equipment and details of any separation measures they have in place to prevent contamination.</p> <p>Subcontractors' premises and facilities may be subject to inspection to comply with control measures. You may need an appropriate agreement or contract with the subcontractor to allow these control measures to take place.</p>
<p><b>1.4.3 Declaration</b></p> <p>You must sign a declaration stating that you:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) have described your organic enterprise and activities as referred to in 1.4.1 accurately</li> <li>b) will perform your operations according to organic rules</li> <li>c) accept any enforcements in case of non-compliance</li> <li>d) inform the buyers of loss of status of your product</li> <li>e) accept exchange of information about your operation between different certification bodies or control authorities where dual certified</li> <li>f) accept handing over information about your certification history when changing certification body or control authority</li> <li>g) will inform your certification body or control authority immediately of any breaches affecting the organic status of your product or organic products received from other operators or subcontractors</li> <li>h) in the case of withdrawing certification inform the certification body or control authority without delay</li> <li>i) accept that your certification body or control authority retains your certification history for a minimum of 5 years</li> </ul>	<p>This is covered in the contract and declaration you sign after every inspection.</p>

<p>j) must inform the certification body of any changes to your activities. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 63(2); Art. 64</i></p>	
<p><b>1.4.4 Other statutory requirements</b> You must make sure your organic business and operations comply with all statutory regulations in your country. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 1(4); Art. 34(2)</i></p>	<p>This includes but is not limited to requirements concerning:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• premises</li> <li>• equipment</li> <li>• staff facilities</li> <li>• general hygiene</li> <li>• protection of food from contamination or deterioration</li> <li>• animal welfare</li> <li>• water</li> <li>• transport</li> <li>• labour and workers, and</li> <li>• wildlife conservation and protection.</li> </ul>
<p><b>1.4.5 Employment</b> You must <b>not</b> use forced or involuntary labour or child labour that interferes with their education. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Note that this standard is also a requirement of several EU Directives including 94/33/EC Protection of Young People at Work, and 2011/36 Preventing and combating trafficking in human beings and protecting its victims.</p> <p>Labour management tools, such as <a href="#">Sedex</a>, can be a useful way of helping to ensure that you meet this standard and identify, mitigate and manage risks in your supply chain.</p>
<p><b>Why?</b></p> <p>Organic food which has been produced in a way that compromises the basic rights of people is counter to the principles and expectations of the organic movement and organic consumers.</p>	
<p><b>1.4.6 Certification code</b> 1. Each certification body is issued with a unique certifier code. 2. You must use <del>this</del> <b>Soil Association Certification's</b> code if you are packing and labelling products yourself or if another Soil Association certified business in the UK is packing or labelling the product on your behalf. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 27(10)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 58</i></p>	<p>Please refer to the labelling section 1.8 for more information on labelling requirements.</p> <p>For product produced or processed in the UK, the Soil Association certifier code is GB-ORG-05.</p>

## 1.5 Inspections

### What is this chapter about?

This chapter explains the certification and inspection process and details your obligations as a licensee and the obligations of the certification body during the inspection process.

#### Standards

##### 1.5.1 Inspection visits

1. A physical inspection of your organic certified activities must be carried out once per year. You may be subject to additional announced or unannounced inspections based on an assessment of risk.
2. If you are a wholesaler dealing only with pre-packaged products you may be subject to a reduced frequency of inspections.
3. You may also be inspected by your competent authority as part of their surveillance of our inspection procedures.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 27(3)(5)  
(EC) 889/2009 Art. 65(1)(4); Art. 92c (2)*

#### Guidance

We may carry out additional inspections if:

- you wish to add a new enterprise to your licence
- you move to new premises
- we receive a complaint regarding your business
- it is necessary to inspect seasonal activity or at different times of year
- we need to inspect again to make sure you have corrected non-compliances
- you are selected as part of our additional inspection programme and/or our risk assessment of your operations suggests the need for this.
- if you are a new licensee we may visit you in your first year to ensure you fully understand and implement the organic requirements.

We may charge you for these additional inspections if we consider they are needed because of non-compliances.

**At least 10% of a certification body's inspections must be unannounced and 10% must be risk-based extra inspections.** These are based on the general evaluation of the risk of non-compliance with the organic production rules, taking into account at least the results of previous controls, the quantity of products concerned and the risk for exchange of products.

##### 1.5.2 What happens at the inspection

1. At your inspection Soil Association Certification will:
  - a) verify that the description of your activities provided in your declaration is accurate
  - b) verify whether your activities are compliant with organic standards, and
  - c) compile an inspection report with any possible deficiencies and non-compliances found.

As part of the closing meeting your Inspector will explain any non-compliances found during your inspection and will ask you to sign a declaration and explain the need to complete an Action Summary form (usually left with you at the end of the inspection) which lists the outcomes of the inspection.

This includes any areas that do not comply with the standards and asks how you will correct them. It may also ask for extra information to complete the approval process.



<p>2. You or an appointed representative must sign the inspection declaration stating that you agree with the outcomes of the inspection and to undertake necessary corrective actions. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 63(2); Art. 65(3); Art. 82(3)</i></p>	<p>You must respond with details of the actions you will take to address non-compliances and supply any other information requested, before the deadline given. When we have received your returned form and agreed the information you have given is satisfactory, we will approve your corrective actions and issue/reissue your certificate.</p>
<p><b>1.5.3 Access to facilities</b> You must give Soil Association Certification or your control authority:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) access to all parts of your unit and all premises, including any non-organic production units and any storage premises for input products which it deems necessary in order to certify your organic activities</li> <li>b) access to accounts and relevant supporting documents which it deems necessary in order to certify your organic activities</li> <li>c) any information reasonably necessary for the purposes of certifying your organic activities, and</li> <li>d) when requested, the results of your own quality assurance programmes.</li> </ul> <p><i>(EC) 899/2009 Art. 63(3); Art. 67(1); Art. 73; Art. 79; Art. 79d</i></p>	
<p><b>1.5.4 Sampling</b> You must allow Soil Association Certification to take samples which will be analysed for the presence of prohibited substances and checking compliance to organic standards. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 65(2)</i></p>	<p>We will take samples if there is a risk that organic standards have not been complied with or to verify that sufficient measures are in place to prevent contamination of organic products. Certification bodies are obliged to take samples from the equivalent of 5% of their licensees per year.</p>
<p><b>1.5.5 Specific requirements for inspecting parallel production of perennial crops</b> If you parallel produce perennial crops you must inform Soil Association Certification at least 48 hours before you harvest each crop so that inspection visits can take place during harvest. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 40(1)(a)</i></p>	

**1.6 Non-compliance with the standards**

## What is this chapter about?

This chapter deals with non-compliances. A non-compliance is when an activity does not comply with an organic standard.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>1.6.1 Non-compliances</b></p> <p>1. Where you are found not to comply with organic standards Soil Association Certification will issue you with a non-compliance. The level of sanction will be proportionate to the severity and extent of the non-compliance and the risk it poses to the integrity of the organic product. Soil Association Certification will always apply the precautionary principle when making decisions on compliance to organic standards.</p> <p>2. Depending on the severity of the non-compliance Soil Association Certification may suspend or even withdraw your licence. If your licence is suspended or withdrawn you must <b>not</b> trade as organic.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834 Art 27(2)(6)(12); Art. 30(1)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 92d</i></p>	<p>After your inspection we will draw up an <i>Action Summary Form</i> (either at inspection or we will send it to you afterwards). This lists areas that do not comply with the standards and asks how you will correct them.</p> <p>The different grades of sanctions are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• minor non-compliance</li><li>• major non-compliance</li><li>• critical non-compliance, or</li><li>• manifest infringement.</li></ul> <p>You are required to complete the <i>Action Summary Form</i> with the actions you will take to comply with the standards, and return it to us with any other information we request before the deadline given. When the Certification Team has received your completed form and agreed that the information you have given is satisfactory they will approve the <i>Action Summary Form</i> and renew your licence.</p> <p>We may suspend or withdraw your licence in the following cases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• if you are in breach of your contract with us</li><li>• if you do not pay your fee within the deadlines</li><li>• failure of licensee to return certified sales declaration (CSD)</li><li>• we are unable to arrange an inspection</li><li>• an inspector is refused access to premises</li><li>• an inspector is refused permission to take a sample</li><li>• if you do not send the completed <i>Action Summary Form</i>, or the information we request, within the deadlines</li><li>• severe or repeated non-compliance resulting in loss of organic integrity of an operation, product or batch</li><li>• a fraudulent activity is reported by an authority.</li></ul>
<p><b>1.6.2 Reporting non-compliances</b></p> <p>1. If you consider or suspect that any of your products do not meet organic standards, then you must inform Soil</p>	<p>You must inform the Certification Team if you have any suspicion that a product may not meet organic standards and stop any further sale of the product as</p>

Association Certification immediately and share all relevant information to assist with any further investigation to determine the organic status of the product. You must also either:

- a) Withdraw any reference to organic in relation to the product.
- b) Separate or identify the product and only allow it to be further processed or sold as organic once any doubt has been eliminated and this has been agreed with us.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 91(1)*

2. If we have a substantiated suspicion that you intend to place a product on to the market as organic which does not meet organic standards, we will tell you to withhold the product for a set time period whilst we investigate. Before we make this decision we will give you opportunity to comment. You will need to cooperate fully with any investigation to resolve the suspicion.

If the suspicion is confirmed, then you must remove any reference to organic from the product. If the suspicion is not confirmed within the set time period, then you no longer have to withhold the product from sale.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 91(2)*





organic until any doubt over its organic status can be eliminated. Suspicion can originate from a number of sources including (but not exclusively):



- A positive residue detection showing contamination with a substance not permitted in organic production (any detection, at any level, will initially be regarded as suspicion until an investigation has taken place). You must inform us in all positive residue detection cases.
- A complaint from a reliable source.
- You have not been able to verify the organic status of goods you have received (see section 1.7 for further information).
- Not being able to verify valid certification of a product or supplier. For **example, if your supplier's certification has been revoked.**
- Knowing that an element of the production did not meet organic standards, for example a prohibited substance has accidentally been applied to your crop or a non-organic ingredient has been used by mistake.

An investigation will be carried out to determine if the product has met organic production rules. Once this has been determined you will be informed if the product can be put back on the market as organic or not.

Note: If you receive a positive detection, but from the information you have, you believe that the product still meets organic standards, then you do not have to inform us of the detection. You need to have justification as to why you believed it still met organic standards and keep that information on file so that we can check it at inspection if necessary. If you are unsure what action to take, please contact the technical team at [sacl.notifications@soilassociation.org](mailto:sacl.notifications@soilassociation.org).

<p><b>1.6.3 Exceptions</b>          You may only deviate from the standards when explicitly permitted in these standards. Permission may be granted or confirmed by your certification body.  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 27(7)(b)</i></p>	
<p><b>1.6.4 Appeals and complaints</b>          We appreciate there may be occasions when you wish to make a formal complaint to us. This could be regarding service, standards, policy, another licensee or an unlicensed company. We have formal complaints and appeals procedures which are available on request. You can make a complaint in writing, by email or by telephone.  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 92(c)</i></p>	<p>If you have a complaint please send details in writing to <a href="mailto:cert.complaints@soilassociation.org">cert.complaints@soilassociation.org</a> or telephone Client Services on 0117 987 4564.</p> <p>If you wish to appeal a certification decision please send full details to the Certification Team.</p>

<p><b>1.7 Record keeping</b></p>	
<p><b>What is this chapter about?</b>          This chapter details all the records that you will need to keep and have available at your inspection.</p>	
<p><b>Standards</b></p>	<p><b>Guidance</b></p>
<p><b>1.7.1 General record keeping</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. You must have a record keeping system in place which allows you to prove the organic status of your products. Your records need to cover all production stages from everything produced or bought in through to all goods sold or dispatched and must allow you to demonstrate the balance between input and output. They must also allow retrospective traceability.</li> <li>2. You must keep stock and financial records at your unit or premises which make it possible to verify the following information for every product:             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) the suppliers, sellers or exporters</li> <li>b) the nature and quantities of organic products delivered, including where relevant:                 <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i) nature and quantities of all materials bought and the use of such materials</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> Standards 1.7.1 -1.7.3 apply to all licensees. More specific record keeping requirements for agricultural operations follow below.</li> <li> Your records need to be sufficient for us to be able to carry out successful mass balance (input and output) and traceability exercises at your inspection. You will need to be able to demonstrate that you have bought/received/produced sufficient organic material for the quantity you have sold/dispached.</li> <li> You need to have a system to keep track of procedures and records to ensure they are correct, up-to-date and effective.</li> <li> Your records should include:             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• checked organic status of goods such as feed, seed and livestock, delivered as per standard 1.14.3</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ii) the composition of compound feed stuffs</li> <li>c) the nature and quantities of organic products held in storage</li> <li>d) the nature, quantities, and consignees or buyers (other than final consumers) of any products which have left your unit, premises or storage facility.</li> </ul> <p>3. If you do not store or physically handle organic products, you will still need to keep records of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) the nature and quantities of organic products bought and sold</li> <li>b) the suppliers, and where different, the sellers or the exporters</li> <li>c) the buyers, and where different the consignees.</li> </ul> <p><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 26(2)(3)(5)(c); Art. 66(1)(2)</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• quantities, batch codes and invoices and delivery notes of goods received</li> <li>• evidence that you produced, stored and handled organic and non-organic products separately</li> <li>• evidence that you cleaned according to these standards before production</li> <li>• relevant paperwork to identify any products sold, how much and to whom</li> <li>• annual stock takes if appropriate</li> <li>• any pest control treatments used</li> </ul>
<p><b>1.7.2 Verifying certification documents</b></p> <p>1. You must verify the certification documents of your suppliers and check that they:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) identify your supplier,</li> <li>b) cover the type or range of products you are purchasing, and</li> <li>c) are valid at the time you are making the purchase.</li> </ul> <p>2. You must make a record of these checks.</p> <p><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 29(2)</i></p>	<p>A certification document will be the organic certificate, or in the case of Soil Association Certification licensees this includes the certificate and trading schedule. The name and address on the certificate must match the name and address of your supplier (the company you are purchasing from).</p> <p>You will need to verify certification documents for any supplier of organic products that you are purchasing from. This will include agents or traders who may not handle the product but who do take ownership of it and sell it to you.</p> <p>When you receive goods, you will also need to make the checks detailed in 1.14.3 Tools such as <a href="#">BioC</a> could be used as a way of doing this.</p> <p> Records of verification checks</p>
<p><b>1.7.3 Complaints register</b></p> <p>You must keep a complaint register for your business. This must record:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) all complaints you make or receive</li> <li>b) any response to the complaint</li> <li>c) the action taken.</li> </ul>	<p> Keeping a record of any complaints you receive encourages transparency. It allows businesses to monitor issues and encourages good practice by ensuring there is a documented system for dealing with complaints.</p>

(EC) 834/2007 Art. 1(4)  
ISO17065 (4.1.2.2)

#### 1.7.4 Specific plant production records

You must keep plant production records in the form of a register which is available at all times on the premises of your holding. These records must provide at least the following information:

- a) as regards the use of fertiliser and soil conditioners: date of application, type and amount of fertiliser, parcels concerned;
- b) as regards the use of pesticides and plant protection products: reason and date of treatment, type of product, method of treatment;
- c) as regards purchase of farm inputs: date, type and amount of purchased product;
- d) as regards harvest: date, type and amount of organic or in conversion crop production.

(EC) 889/2008 Art. 72

Refer to section 2.5 for permitted fertilisers and soil conditioners and 2.6 for permitted pesticides and plant protection products.

 Plant production records

#### 1.7.5 Cropping plan

Each year, you must provide us with a cropping plan, giving a breakdown by parcel.


(EC) 889/2008 Art. 71

 We will send you our Annual Questionnaire form before your annual inspection, where you can record this information.

#### 1.7.6 General livestock records


You must keep livestock records in the form of a register which is available at all times on the premises of your holding. These records must provide a full description of the herd or flock management system comprising of at least the information required in this section.


(EC) 889/2008 Art. 76

 Livestock records see standards below for specific requirements

#### 1.7.7 Livestock movement records

1. When you bring animals in you must record:
  - a) species, source, numbers
  - b) organic status
  - c) identification mark
  - d) any quarantine measures taken


 At inspection you will be required to show up to date records. These can be in any format. Electronic and printed versions are available from several sources. Government guidance can be found [here](#).

 Livestock movement records.

<p>e) age f) veterinary history, and g) date of arrival.</p> <p>2. When your animals are sold or leave your holding you must record:</p> <p>a) species b) destination c) numbers sold d) slaughtered weight where appropriate e) identification mark, and f) age.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 76(a)(b)</i></p>	<p>If you bring in stock reared under simultaneous conversion, you must record all details of their conversion requirements.</p> <p><b>I</b> We can provide Livestock Transfer Documents and Organic Livestock Movement to Slaughter documents which will meet all these requirements. Ask the Certification Team if you need copies of these.</p>						
<p><b>1.7.8 Livestock mortality records</b> You must keep details of livestock mortalities including:</p> <p>a) species and number of animals lost b) reason for mortality</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 76(c)</i></p>	<p>At inspection you will be required to provide the following mortality records for the previous 12 months or in the case of poultry the oldest flock on farm at point of inspection:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="background-color: #f2f2f2; vertical-align: top;"> <p><b>R</b> Dairy cows</p> </td> <td style="background-color: #f2f2f2; vertical-align: top;"> <p>a) Number of losses per 100 cows calved for the following categories:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i) 0 - 24hrs - all calves (including stillborn)</li> <li>ii) 24 hrs - 42 days - all calves</li> <li>iii) 42 days - 1st calving - dairy heifers</li> <li>iv) 1st calving - 2nd calving - dairy heifers.</li> </ul> <p>b) Number of planned culls c) Number of unplanned culls or casualty cows (died or killed on farm) in the last 12 months. Where possible, also record reasons d) Number of enforced culls, e.g. TB.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td style="background-color: #f2f2f2; vertical-align: top;"> <p><b>R</b> Beef Cattle</p> </td> <td style="background-color: #f2f2f2; vertical-align: top;"> <p>Number of losses:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Stillborn – 24 hours</li> <li>b) 24 hours – 10 days</li> <li>c) 10 days – weaning</li> <li>d) Weaning – first calving /point of sale</li> <li>e) Less than 30 months</li> <li>f) 30 months +</li> </ul> </td> </tr> <tr> <td style="background-color: #f2f2f2; vertical-align: top;"> <p><b>R</b> Sheep</p> </td> <td style="background-color: #f2f2f2; vertical-align: top;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Number of planned culls</li> <li>b) Number of unplanned culls or casualties (died or killed on farm) in the last 12 months.</li> </ul> </td> </tr> </table>	<p><b>R</b> Dairy cows</p>	<p>a) Number of losses per 100 cows calved for the following categories:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i) 0 - 24hrs - all calves (including stillborn)</li> <li>ii) 24 hrs - 42 days - all calves</li> <li>iii) 42 days - 1st calving - dairy heifers</li> <li>iv) 1st calving - 2nd calving - dairy heifers.</li> </ul> <p>b) Number of planned culls c) Number of unplanned culls or casualty cows (died or killed on farm) in the last 12 months. Where possible, also record reasons d) Number of enforced culls, e.g. TB.</p>	<p><b>R</b> Beef Cattle</p>	<p>Number of losses:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Stillborn – 24 hours</li> <li>b) 24 hours – 10 days</li> <li>c) 10 days – weaning</li> <li>d) Weaning – first calving /point of sale</li> <li>e) Less than 30 months</li> <li>f) 30 months +</li> </ul>	<p><b>R</b> Sheep</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Number of planned culls</li> <li>b) Number of unplanned culls or casualties (died or killed on farm) in the last 12 months.</li> </ul>
<p><b>R</b> Dairy cows</p>	<p>a) Number of losses per 100 cows calved for the following categories:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i) 0 - 24hrs - all calves (including stillborn)</li> <li>ii) 24 hrs - 42 days - all calves</li> <li>iii) 42 days - 1st calving - dairy heifers</li> <li>iv) 1st calving - 2nd calving - dairy heifers.</li> </ul> <p>b) Number of planned culls c) Number of unplanned culls or casualty cows (died or killed on farm) in the last 12 months. Where possible, also record reasons d) Number of enforced culls, e.g. TB.</p>						
<p><b>R</b> Beef Cattle</p>	<p>Number of losses:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Stillborn – 24 hours</li> <li>b) 24 hours – 10 days</li> <li>c) 10 days – weaning</li> <li>d) Weaning – first calving /point of sale</li> <li>e) Less than 30 months</li> <li>f) 30 months +</li> </ul>						
<p><b>R</b> Sheep</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Number of planned culls</li> <li>b) Number of unplanned culls or casualties (died or killed on farm) in the last 12 months.</li> </ul>						

		When possible record reasons for cull / casualty ewes. When possible record main reasons for lamb losses.
	<p><b>R</b></p> <p>Pigs: Dry Sows</p>	<p>a) Percentage mortality (died but not actively culled) on farm in the last 12 months.</p> <p>b) Percentage culls in the last 12 months.</p> <p>Record the predominant cause of mortality.</p>
	<p><b>R</b></p> <p>Pigs: Finishers</p>	<p>a) Percentage mortality (died but not actively culled) on farm in the last 12 months or for the last batch</p> <p>Record the predominant cause of mortality.</p>
	<p><b>R</b></p> <p>Broilers</p>	<p>a) First week mortality, including culls (%).</p> <p>b) Mortality to date - dead birds only, i.e. not including culls (%).</p> <p>c) Culls to date, not including leg culls (%).</p> <p>d) Leg culls to date - leg culls only (%).</p> <p>Also record this information for the previous flock.</p> <p>Record predominant cause/s of mortality and culls.</p>
	<p><b>R</b></p> <p>Laying hens</p>	<p>a) Mortality of previous flock</p> <p>b) Mortality to date</p> <p>c) Mortality to 40 weeks (where applicable)</p> <p>Record the predominant cause of mortality for each of a), b) and c).</p>
<b>Standards</b>		<b>Guidance</b>
<p><b>1.7.9 Feed records</b></p> <p>1. Your feed records must include:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>type, such as forage, straights or compound, including supplements</li> <li>source of feed</li> <li>percentage of each ingredient in the rations</li> <li>amount of feed, including the amount of non-organic ingredients fed to each animal or group of animals,</li> <li>organic status, such as organic, in-conversion or non-organic.</li> </ol> <p>2. You must record the period when your livestock have access to grazing or exercise areas and, where applicable, periods of transhumance.</p> <p><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 66 (1)(a)(b)(2); Art. 76(d)</i></p>		<p><b>R</b> At inspection provide the feed records in any format for each animal group. This should include copies of feed labels.</p>



<p><b>1.7.10 Veterinary records</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. When you use any veterinary medicines you must record: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) date the treatment started and ended</li> <li>b) reason for treatment</li> <li>c) the name and type and batch number of the medicine and its active substance</li> <li>d) method of treatment</li> <li>e) number and identity of animals you treat</li> <li>f) length of the legal withdrawal period in days</li> <li>g) earliest date you can sell the animal or its products as organic</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Whenever veterinary medicines are used the information recorded must be declared to your certification body or control authority before the livestock or livestock products are marketed as organic.</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 76(e); Art. 77</i></p>	<p> Records of veterinary treatments used</p> <p>Veterinary medicines are products which are used to treat or prevent disease.</p> <p>Examples of veterinary medicines include antibiotics, vaccinations, parasite treatments, minerals and vitamins, herbal and homeopathic products.</p> <p>There are additional statutory record keeping requirements for veterinary medicines. Government guidance can be found <a href="#">here</a>.</p>
<p><b>1.7.11 Identification of livestock</b></p> <p>You must identify your livestock at all stages of their production, preparation, transport and marketing using techniques adapted to each species. This must be done individually in the case of large mammals and individually or by batch in the case of poultry and small mammals.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 75</i></p>	<p>The methods you use to identify your livestock must meet the legal requirements of country. In GB you must follow <a href="#">Defra requirements</a>.</p>

## 1.8 General labelling

### What's this chapter about?

This section contains the labelling standards which need to be met if you wish to label your product as organic.

#### Standards

##### 1.8.1 Using the term organic

If you wish to refer to organic in relation to an agricultural food or feed product anywhere on a label, in advertising materials or commercial documents, you must meet the requirements of these standards.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 23(1)*

#### Guidance



Labelling refers to the way in which you identify your products and show their organic status. The labelling standards apply to:

- retail packaging
- bulk packaging
- the labelling of loose produce for sale in retail outlets
- information on delivery notes or invoices for products that are packed or labelled before sale, such as milk, livestock and grain
- marketing materials, and
- web content.

This includes reference to organic not just in the product name or sales description, but also in relation to ingredients of a food or feed product. For example, a cereal bar making organic claims about some of the ingredients may only do so if the cereal bar is certified to the Organic Regulation. This only applies to food and feed products. However, if you make such claims on non-food and feed products (such as textiles, health and beauty products, and pet food) your claims must still be true. In the UK all products are governed by the *Trade Descriptions Act*.

Examples of other references to organic include, "organically **grown**"; "**organically produced**"; "**grown/produced using organic principles**"; "grown/produced using organic methods".



#### Labelling legislation

Along with meeting these standards for labelling, you will also need to make sure your labels meet other relevant labelling legislation such as [Regulation 1169/2011](#) on the provision of food information to consumers, and the [Food Information Regulations](#).

### 1.8.2 Products with 95%-100% organic ingredients

Food products containing 95%-100% organic agricultural ingredients can be labelled as organic provided that they meet the composition requirements in standard 6.3.1 (Food and Drink) and the labelling includes the following:

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 23(4)(a)*

- a) An indication of which ingredients are organic in the ingredients list.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 23(4)*

- b) For operators in GB the use of the EU logo is optional.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 25; Art. 24(1)(b)*

- c) For GB a statement of agricultural origin (see standard 1.8.7)

- d) When the EU logo is used, an indication of where the ingredients were farmed or grown (see standard 1.8.7).

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 24(1)(c)*

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 58(2)*

- e) The code of the certifier who certifies the company that applies the labels (which may or may not be you). This must appear in the same visual field as the EU organic logo if the EU logo is used.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 24(1)(a)*

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 58(1)(d)*

- f) A traceability code, such as a batch or date code.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 31(1)(d)*

- g) The EU logo, statement of agricultural origin and code of the certifier must be marked in a conspicuous place in such a way as to be easily visible, clearly legible and indelible.

Guidance for each point is set out below:

- a) Identifying organic ingredients

If any non-organic ingredients are used, make a clear indication on the ingredients panel as to the organic status of each ingredient. This includes water and salt as these are non-organic.

For example:

Ingredients: Organic Flour (fortified with calcium carbonate, iron, niacin, thiamin), Water, Organic Eggs, Organic Sunflower seeds, Yeast, Salt.

Or, Ingredients: Flour (fortified with calcium carbonate\*, iron\*, niacin\*, thiamin\*), Water\*, Eggs, Sunflower seeds, Yeast\*, Salt\*. \*Non-organic.

- b) Using the EU logo

The EU sets the rules for the use of the EU leaf logo. Its use is optional on foods produced in GB and other countries outside the EU. It cannot be used on non-food products. See EU logo standard 1.8.6 for details.

- c) Statement of agricultural origin

See standard 'declaring ingredient origin' (1.8.7) for details.

- e) Certifier code

Each certification body has its own code which its operators need to use on pack. The code for Soil Association Certification in the UK is **GB-ORG-05**. If you are packing and labelling the product yourself or a Soil Association certified company in the UK is packing or labelling the product on your behalf, this is the code which must be used.

However, if you use another company to apply packaging or labels to your product(s), you need to use the code of their certification body on pack, even if the product carries the Soil Association symbol. For example, if you are using a French contract packer certified by Ecocert, use the Ecocert code FR-BIO-01, do not use GB-ORG-05. The certification code of your subcontractor is usually featured on their organic certificate.

<i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 24(2)</i>	If your product is labelled outside GB, NI or the EU and you are not using the EU logo then you do not have to use the certifier's code, but you must include the name of the certifier.
<p>h) Your ingredients list must identify any non-organic ingredients of ingredients, unless exempted – as outlined in the guidance <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>If you are in any doubt as to what certifier code you should use on your labels please do contact the Certification Team for guidance.</p> <p>Labels of non-food products, such as textiles and health and beauty care, or medicinal products must not include the code of the certifier. This is because they fall outside the scope of the GB Organic Regulation.</p> <p>d) Traceability code Your labelling must include a traceability code. Please refer to the record keeping section 1.7 for details.</p> <p>g) Identifying non-organic ingredients of ingredients You must list any non-organic ingredients of ingredients. For compound ingredients you can either list the individual non-organic ingredient in the compound ingredient, or use a generic description such as '<b>contains a non-organic ingredient</b>'.</p> <p>If you are using an organic flavouring in a product, you do not need to list the non-organic components of the organic flavouring, provided the non-organic components account for less than 1% of the final product.</p>
<p><i>Why?</i></p> <p>The GB Organic Regulation doesn't require non-organic ingredients of ingredients to be declared on labels. Soil Association believes that transparency is important to consumers and can help to drive positive change, so Soil Association standards require any non-organic ingredients of ingredients to be declared on the label.</p>	
<b>Standards</b>	<b>Guidance</b>
<p><b>1.8.3 Using the Soil Association symbol</b></p> <p>1. You must use the Soil Association symbol on the packaging of Soil Association certified products which contain 95%-100% organic ingredients, except where there is a good reason for not doing so.</p>	<p>Examples of exceptions where you would not have to use the Soil Association symbol are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• where the label is so small that it would jeopardise other information required by law</li> <li>• for products which are only sold outside the UK</li> </ul>

<p>2. You must <b>not</b> use the Soil Association symbol on products containing less than 95% organic ingredients.</p> <p>3. You must <b>not</b> use the Soil Association symbol on in-conversion products.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• where your labelling machine cannot include the symbol and you cannot apply the symbol in another way</li> <li>• where you are acting as a sub-contractor to a brandholder who is licensed <b>with a different organic certification body and the brandholder doesn't want you to use it</b>, and</li> <li>• where the symbol has not been used on a brand since July 2008</li> </ul> <p>For in-conversion products you could use the wording 'Soil Association approved organic conversion'.</p>
--	--

### Why?

Use of the Soil Association symbol on products that cannot be called organic could be confusing and has the potential to mislead consumers.

Standards	Guidance										
<p><b>1.8.4 Products with less than 95% organic ingredients</b></p> <p>1. For products where less than 95% of the agricultural ingredients are organic you can only include reference to organic in the ingredients list. In order to do this you must:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>indicate which ingredients are organic in the ingredients list.</li> <li>include the total percentage of organic ingredients in the ingredients list (as a percentage of the agricultural ingredients).</li> <li>use the same colour, size and style of lettering in the reference to organic and percentage statement as you do as for the non-organic ingredients.</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 23(4)</i></p> <p>2. For products where the main ingredient is a product of hunting or fishing and other agricultural ingredients are organic you cannot call the product organic, but you can identify the organic ingredients in the same field visual field as the product description. You must also:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>indicate which ingredients are organic in the ingredients list</li> </ol>	<p>Guidance for each point is set out below:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Less than 95% organic bulk labels</li> </ol> <p>For bulk products which do not include the ingredient information on the label, indicate the total percentage of organic ingredients on the product label instead.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Main ingredient of hunting and fishing</li> </ol> <p><b>The 'main ingredient' means it accounts</b> for at least 50% agricultural ingredients or is the characterising ingredient. Added water and salt are not taken into account.</p> <p>Products of hunting and fishing are considered agricultural ingredients so are included in percentage calculations.</p> <p>For example, Sardines in tomato sauce:</p> <table style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>Sardines</td> <td style="text-align: right;">52%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Organic tomatoes</td> <td style="text-align: right;">32%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Organic olive oil</td> <td style="text-align: right;">11%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Organic lemon</td> <td style="text-align: right;">5%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Organic content =</td> <td style="text-align: right;">48%</td> </tr> </table> <p>The label will indicate total organic content of 48%.</p>	Sardines	52%	Organic tomatoes	32%	Organic olive oil	11%	Organic lemon	5%	Organic content =	48%
Sardines	52%										
Organic tomatoes	32%										
Organic olive oil	11%										
Organic lemon	5%										
Organic content =	48%										

<p>b) include the total percentage of organic ingredients in the ingredients list (as a percentage of the agricultural ingredients)</p> <p>c) use the same colour, size and style of lettering in the reference to organic and percentage statement as you do for the non-organic ingredients.</p> <p><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 23(4)(c)</i></p> <p>3. You must <b>not</b> use the EU logo on products containing less than 95% organic ingredients.</p> <p><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 25(1)</i></p> <p>4. The label must include the code number of the certifier who certifies the company that carries out the most recent production, preparation or packing for the product (which may or may not be you).</p> <p><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 24(1)(a)</i></p> <p>5. You must include a traceability code, such as a batch or date code.</p> <p><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 31(1)(d)</i></p>	<p>3. This table provides a summary of the main differences in labelling requirements for products containing more than 95% and less than 95% organic agricultural ingredients, and in-conversion products.</p>					
	<p>% organic agricultural ingredients</p>	<p>References to organic</p>	<p>Soil Association Organic logo</p>	<p>EU Organic logo (optional in GB)</p>	<p>Certification code</p>	<p>Statement of agricultural origin</p>
<p><b>More than 95%</b></p>	<p>✓</p>	<p>✓</p>	<p>✓</p>	<p>✓</p>	<p>✓</p>	<p>✓</p>
<p><b>Less than 95%</b></p>	<p>Only in ingredient list</p>	<p>✗</p>	<p>✗</p>	<p>✓</p>	<p>✗</p>	<p>✗</p>
<p>In-conversion product</p>	<p>You may use the wording <b>'product under conversion to organic farming'</b></p>	<p>✗</p> <p>You may use the wording <b>'Soil Association approved organic conversion'</b></p>	<p>✗</p>	<p>✓</p>	<p>✗</p>	<p>✗</p>
<p><b>Standards</b></p>	<p><b>Guidance</b></p>					
<p><b>1.8.5 In-conversion products</b></p> <p>1. To label your product as 'in-conversion', the product must:</p> <p>a) have been grown on land that has gone through at least a 12 month conversion period before the crop was harvested, and</p>						

- b) contain only one agricultural ingredient, which must be of plant origin, either processed or unprocessed.  
*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 19(2)(e); Art. 26(b)*  
*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 62(a)(c)*

2. The label must:

- a) include the wording 'product under conversion to organic farming', provided it is not more prominent in colour, size and style of lettering than the sales description of the product. The words 'organic farming' must not be more prominent than the words 'product under conversion to'.
- b) Include the certifier code.  
*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 62(b)(d)*

3. You must **not** use the EU logo on in-conversion products.  
*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 25(1)*

### 1.8.6 Using the EU organic logo

- 1. You must display the EU logo on labels of packaged organic products produced in Northern Ireland or the EU.
- 2. The EU logo is published for use in green as shown below. The reference for single colour printing is Pantone 376, or if you print using four colour process, 50% cyan, 100% yellow.

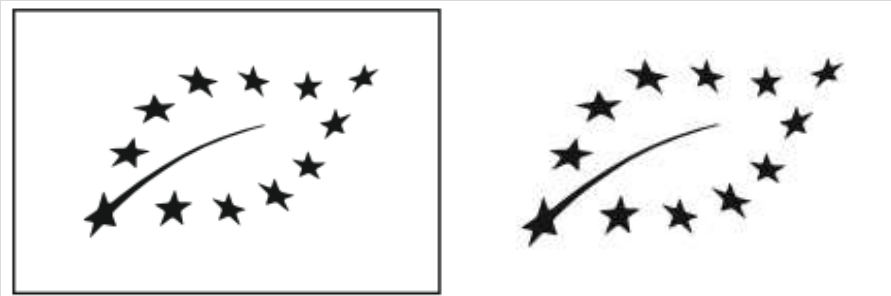


3. Where colour is not possible you may use black and white.

The use of the logo is mandatory for all organic pre-packaged food produced within Northern Ireland or the European Union. The terms of its use are set by the EU and more information can be found [online](#).

You can download the EU logo in various formats from [here](#).

The white EU logo with the black stars is designed to be used on a dark background only. When the EU logo is used it must appear within a box or a black outline.





4. The EU organic logo must:
  - a) appear at least 9mm high and 13.5mm wide, or
  - b) appear 6mm high for very small packages, and
  - c) have a proportional height to width ratio of 1:1.5
5. The EU organic logo may appear:
  - a) in negative, if the background of your packaging is dark.
  - b) in the single colour of your packaging if you are only able to print one colour.
  - c) with an outer line around it to improve how it stands out on coloured backgrounds.
  - d) in conjunction with other logos and text referring to organic, providing this does not overlap, obscure or change the logo.
6. You do not have to use the EU organic logo on products produced in GB, but if you do, you must also use the declaration of where the ingredients have been farmed and the certifier code.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 24(1)(b)(c); Art. 25  
(EC) 889/2008 Art. 57; Annex XI (1)(2)(3)(4)(5)(6)(7)(8)*

#### 1.8.7 Declaring ingredient origin

1. You need to include a declaration of where the ingredients have been farmed or grown

If your product is being packed outside Northern Ireland and the EU, you do not need to apply the EU logo. However, due to the widespread recognition of the EU logo across Europe you may wish to apply it if the products are destined for the EU market.

Products without packaging do not need to display the EU logo (see standard 1.14.2 for details of what you need to include).

The declaration should be placed directly underneath the certifier code.

If the EU logo is used the declaration needs to be in the same visual field as the EU [logo](#).



<p>2. For products produced in GB you must use UK <b>Agriculture</b>, <b>'Non-UK Agriculture'</b> or <b>'UK/Non-UK Agriculture'</b>.</p> <p>3. If the EU logo is used you must also include a declaration in relation to the EU - <b>'EU agriculture', 'non-EU agriculture', or 'EU/non-EU agriculture'</b>. This must appear:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>in the same visual field as the EU organic logo;</li> <li>below the certifier code, and</li> <li>no more prominent than the sales description.</li> </ol> <p>4. You can replace <b>'UK' or 'Non-UK', 'EU' or 'non-EU'</b> with a particular country if all ingredients were farmed or grown there. In this case only one declaration is required. You do not have to count small amounts of ingredients up to a total of 2% of the agricultural ingredients.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 24(1c)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 58(2)</i></p>	<p>If you are in GB and use the EU organic logo for exports to the EU, you need to include both the GB statement of agriculture ('UK or non-UK Agriculture') and the EU statement of agriculture ('EU or non-EU Agriculture').</p> <p>If the product contains 98% ingredients grown in a particular constituent nation of the UK, it can be labelled either as that specific country or UK Agriculture. For example, lamb produced in Wales could be labelled either as Welsh Agriculture or UK Agriculture. If you use this, it complies with both the UK and EU requirements.</p>
<p><b>1.8.8 Using the Soil Association symbol on products</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can only use the Soil Association symbol on organic products that meet the Soil Association standards.</li> <li>You must reproduce the symbol from original artwork and it must appear: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>complete and upright</li> <li>in proportion to the product description</li> <li>at least 10mm in diameter (example 'A')</li> <li>in black or white (examples 'B' and 'C')</li> <li>clearly visible</li> <li>clear and legible over the whole of a background, for example if used over a photograph (example 'D')</li> <li>no less prominent than the EU logo</li> </ol> </li> </ol>	<p>For more information on how to become certified to the Soil Association standards and the use of our symbol, please refer to section 1.3.</p> <p>Retailers who are exempt from being certified (standard 1.3.2) may sell Soil Association certified products which include the SA symbol on their labelling, and make use of the Soil Association symbol in the marketing of those products provided it is clear and unambiguous as to which products the symbol applies.</p> <p>You can download the symbol pack directly from our <a href="#">website</a>. We also have the symbol available for use in Welsh and Gaelic.</p> <p>If you are using a Soil Association certified sub-contractor to label your product they may apply the Soil Association symbol to your packaging. Organic operators certified by other certification bodies can also apply the Soil Association symbol on your packs, but only if there is a <i>Contract Symbol User Agreement</i> in place with them. Please talk to the Certification Team to find out more.</p>



If you wish to use the symbol at a smaller size than 10mm in diameter (for example on very small packaging) or in a colour other than black and white, you must seek permission first.

3. The symbol must not appear:
- a) against a background that affects the legibility of the **symbol (example 'E')**
  - b) incomplete
  - c) at an angle
  - d) within an extra circle either of an outline or solid **colour (example 'F')**
  - e) **in more than one colour (example 'G')**
  - f) **with a different font or typeface (example 'H')**

Examples of how not to use the symbol are shown below.



*Soil Association higher standard*

**Why?**

The Soil Association symbol is the most recognised organic certification mark in the UK and has gained the trust, respect and confidence of consumers and producers across the globe. The Soil Association symbol demonstrates that an organic food or non-food product meets our higher standards for animal welfare, health, consumer protection and the protection of the natural environment.

**Standards**

**1.8.9 Using the Soil Association symbol off-product**

You may use the symbol on company stationery, promotional literature and websites if we certify a range of your products, providing it is not misleading to the consumer as to which products the symbol applies.

*Soil Association higher standard*

**Guidance**

You can download the symbol pack directly from our [website](#). We also have the symbol available for use in Welsh and Gaelic.

**Why?**

The Soil Association symbol should only be used in relation to products or enterprises certified to Soil Association standards to avoid misleading consumers.

## 1.9 Making claims on your labels

### What is this chapter about?

The standards in this section outline the requirements relating to certain labelling claims. As well as meeting the requirements of these standards, you will need to make sure your products meet all statutory labelling legislation.

### Standards

#### 1.9.1 Using accurate descriptions

1. **The term 'organic' can only be used to describe products** (in labels, advertising and commercial documents on products) that meet the requirements of these standards, unless the term is not being used in relation to agricultural products in food or feed, or clearly have no connection to organic production.
2. You must **not** use any terms, including terms used in trademarks, labels or advertising, that could mislead consumers into believing products are organic when they are not.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 23(2)*

### Guidance

Your sales description and product name will need to accurately describe your product. You can't use the word **organic**, even if it is part of your company trade name, in relation to non-organic products (e.g. on labels).

#### **I** Substantiating claims

You will need to be able to substantiate any claims that you make on your labels. For example:

**You should not use phrases such as 'GMO free' unless you can prove this, if challenged.** Instead you could use:

- 'organic standards prohibit the use of GM materials', or
- 'non-GM'.

**You should not use phrases such as 'pesticide free' unless you can prove this, if challenged.** Instead you could use:

- 'Less pesticides, or
- 'Organic farming uses virtually no pesticides, or
- 'No system of farming has lower pesticide use'

We worked closely with the Advertising Standards Authority to draw up a document of approved advertising claims you can make when selling organic. You can find a copy on our [website](#).

#### **I** Labelling claims

In England, responsibility for food labelling legislation and policy is split across Defra, the Food Standards Agency (FSA) and the Department of Health (DH). For Scotland and Wales all domestic standards legislation is the responsibility of the FSA.

Visit this [website](#) for details.

## 1.10 Labelling in specific scenarios

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>1.10.1 Labelling requirements for licensees (including retailers, farm shops and farmers' market stalls) selling direct to consumers</b></p> <p>You must display your certificate of registration in a way that is clearly visible to your customers. If only some of your products are organic or if your organic supply is sporadic, you also need to provide additional information so that it is clear which products or produce the organic certificate refers to.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>In order to make it clear which products your organic certificate relates to, you could also display your trading schedule which lists all the products you are certified to sell. If your organic supply is sporadic, or if the certificate only relates to some items that you are selling, you could add an explanatory note making it clear which products the certificate relates to, and how these are indicated.</p> <p>Display the certificate in a sensible location in store. For example, if your store is only licensed to cover the loose fruit and vegetables you sell, then put the certificate near the produce.</p> <p>Online retailers do not have to include their certificate of registration on their website, but they must indicate which products are covered by their Soil Association organic certification. Refer to use of Soil Association symbol in standard 1.8.8.</p>
<p><b>Why?</b></p> <p>This standard helps to avoid misleading consumers by making it clear which products on sale are organic.</p>	
<p><b>1.10.2 Stamping eggshells and meat</b></p> <p>You must only use colours in accordance with articles 2(8) and 2(9) of directive 94/36/EC for stamping meat and eggshells.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 27(1d)</i></p>	<p><b>Egg stamps</b></p> <p>Even if you stamp your eggs with the egg markings, you still need to label the egg boxes in accordance with the general organic labelling standards.</p> <p>You can find more information on egg marking on the Defra <a href="#">website</a>.</p> <p><b>Meat stamps</b></p> <p>Please refer to the abattoir standards on our <a href="#">website</a> for full details of meat stamp requirements including details of the records which must be kept.</p>

## 1.11 Preserving organic integrity

## What is the chapter about?

The standards in this section cover which substances are prohibited and what you need to do to prevent contamination.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>1.11.1 Reducing the risk of contamination</b> You must identify any risk of contamination to your organic products by any unauthorised or prohibited substances and ensure measures are in place to reduce the risk of contamination. When new risks are identified you must review the measures you have in place and ensure they remain appropriate. The risks identified and the measures in place must be documented.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 26(1)&amp;(2); Art. 63(1)(c)</i></p>	<p>You must consider what you do to reduce the risk of contamination at all stages of production, including processing, storage and transport, including how you determine that the measures you have in place are sufficient and how you monitor that they remain effective. You could use details of any sampling and testing that you carry out.</p> <p>Examples of risks include:</p> <p><b>Environmental</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Spray drift or environmental contamination from inputs used on near-by non-organic crops.</li><li>• Contamination from nearby non-organic, or historically treated, processing or storage areas.</li><li>• Cross pollination or physical contamination from GM crops and seeds either growing nearby or previously grown nearby or on the now organic land.</li><li>• Heavy metal contamination in the soil.</li></ul> <p><b>Management</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Insufficient separation, clean down or procedures when carrying out non-dedicated production including equipment, processing, storage, packaging and transport.</li><li>• Cleaning materials insufficiently rinsed off product contact surfaces</li><li>• Ineffective identification of organic and non-organic products at all times.</li><li>• Insufficient staff training and ongoing management to ensure procedures are being followed correctly.</li><li>• Products that may be in contact with crops.</li><li>• Insufficient pest management.</li></ul> <p><b>Risk products</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Chemical or GM contamination from non-organic inputs (e.g. manure, feed, minerals, pesticides, fertilisers).</li><li>• Using risk ingredients – they may be a risk depending on what they are or where they come from. For example, some ingredients like maize and soya</li></ul>

	<p>from countries like USA, Brazil, Argentina and Canada have a higher risk of being contaminated by GMOs.</p> <p>If you use non-organic manure send us a completed GMO declaration <a href="#">form</a> and we may request labels of feed fed to the animals producing the manure at inspection. Where PCR testing is used to determine that measures are effective at preventing GMO contamination the test must be carried out to the limit of detection of 0.1%.</p> <p>Where pesticide residue testing is carried out we recommend it is carried out by a laboratory accredited to the ISO 17025 standard. If possible, the actual test method should also be accredited to ISO 17025 or equivalent</p> <p>Staff training is an important way to ensure that risk of contamination is minimised. You should ensure that all staff are adequately trained and deemed competent to meet organic requirements and your own operational procedures. This will need to be repeated whenever changes are made. Training records and staff reviews may be reviewed at inspection to verify this.</p>
<p><b>1.11.2 Genetic modification</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Products labelled as consisting of or made from GMOs must never be described as organic. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 23(3)</i></li> <li>2. You must <b>not</b> use GMOs or products made from or by GMOs or their derivatives. You must be able to demonstrate that any food, feed, processing aids, additives, micro-organisms, plant protection products, fertilisers, soil conditioners, seeds, vegetative propagating materials and animals used in organic production do not contain any GMOs or their derivatives.</li> <li>3. For food and feed products in the UK and EU, Directive 2001/18/EC, Regulation (EC) 1829/2003 or Regulation (EC) 1830/2003 are applicable, and you may rely on labels or any other accompanying documents to confirm that they are non-GM, unless you have other information that the products do not meet the Directive and Regulations listed above.</li> </ol>	<p>In the UK and EU, if a product contains GMOs or their derivatives then it must be labelled as such, (as described in 1.11.2.3) so the regulation allows labels to be relied upon as evidence to indicate whether food contains GMOs or their derivatives. This would apply to products such as agricultural crops, like maize and soya, or their derivatives like lecithin or starch. However, Directive <a href="#">2001/18/EC</a>, <a href="#">Regulation (EC) 1829/2003</a> and <a href="#">Regulation (EC) 1830/2003</a> do not extend to the use of ingredients produced by genetically modified micro-organisms. For example, enzymes and vitamins. This means that it cannot be automatically assumed that a product complies with the specific GMO requirements of the organic regulations. For this reason, we require a completed GMO declaration for all products that may be a GM risk.</p> <p>Our GMO declaration form explains which additives, processing aids and ingredients are GMO risks. The Certification Team can also confirm any other ingredients which are a GMO risk.</p> <p>There is a specific form to be used for licensees producing products under a Soil Association Standards licence and a separate form to use for licensees producing</p>

<p>4. For products that are not food or feed, or products that could be produced by GMOs you will need to get confirmation from your suppliers, in the form of a non-GM declaration, that the products supplied have not been produced from or by GMOs.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 9(1)(2)(3)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 69; Annex XIII</i></p>	<p>product certified to the GB Organic Regulation only. standards This is because the Soil Association has additional requirements in this area, as outlined in 1.11.2.5.</p> <p>Please contact us if you need a blank template of the non-GM declaration form for your suppliers to complete.</p>
<p>5. For Soil Association products and ingredients you will need to provide additional information to demonstrate their non-GM status.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>1.11.2.3 also says, if you have other information that the products do not meet the GM labelling requirements then you cannot rely on the information stated on the label. For example, test results which show GM DNA in the product. If you or a third party tests any of your organic products and gets a positive result, you must inform us of that result as soon as possible.</p> <p>Farmers purchasing animal feeds may rely on the information provided on the labels, or accompany documents. Feed used must be certified organic so any checks on GM status will have been done by the feed processors.</p> <p>As part of due diligence and controlling risks, operators who import/process/trade GM risk organic ingredients may wish to carry out testing for GMOs. For example, soya or maize products. Testing must be to the lowest limit of quantification (0.1%) and not just to 0.9%.</p>
<p><b>Why?</b></p> <p>GM ingredients have no place in organic food. In order to provide additional assurance that Soil Association certified products and ingredients do not contain GM, we require suppliers of risk products and ingredients to provide additional verification to prove their non-GM status.</p>	
<p><b>1.11.3 Nanoparticles</b></p> <p>1. Organic products must <b>not</b> contain or consist of engineered nanoparticles.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p> <p>2. This standard does not apply to incidental nanoparticles.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Incidental nanoparticles not prohibited by this standard include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Substances that are incidental by-products of other manufacturing processes (such as milling or homogenisation).</li> <li>• Naturally occurring nanoparticles, for example, from volcanic eruptions, in wood smoke or sea spray.</li> </ul> <p>The definition of manufactured nanoparticles reflects the definition of nanomaterials in the <a href="#">Food Information for Consumers regulation 1169/2011</a>.</p>



Examples of products that we know may contain manufactured nanoparticles and that are commercially available include titanium dioxide and zinc oxide used in health and beauty products. The manufactured nanoparticle versions of these products are transparent.

### Why?

Nanomaterials may introduce new or heightened risks of toxicity, which are currently little understood. The possible effects of these nanomaterials on the environment, human and animal health are currently unknown.

Nanotechnology involves the manipulation of materials and the creation of structures and systems at the scale of atoms and molecules. This can be either through simple physical processes or by specific engineering.

Nanomaterials include:

- nanoparticles and nanoemulsions
- nanostructures including nanocapsules, nanotubes, fullerenes (buckyballs), quantum dots and nanowires.

The properties of nanomaterials can differ significantly from those at larger scales because quantum effects start to occur at the nanoscale. These differences may be in chemical reactivity and biological activity, solubility and mobility, colour and transparency, among others.

These are examples of known and developing uses of nanotechnology:

- food additives, such as for flavouring, enhanced absorption of nutrients or modifying texture
- in health and beauty products, such as in transparent mineral sunscreens and make-up products
- in packaging, including quantum dots for traceability, UV light filters, nanoclays as gas barriers and carbon nanotubes to alter strength-to-weight ratio
- medicinal, such as drug delivery, DNA vaccines and advanced therapies
- environmental, such as soil remediation
- pesticides, such as pesticide delivery in nanoemulsions, and
- textiles, such as stain and water resistant coatings.

## 1.12 Cleaning

### What is this chapter about?

The standards in this section which cleaning products and measures are permitted for different organic activities in order to minimise the use of chemical substances and risk of contamination.

### Standards

#### 1.12.1 Cleaning measures

1. You must have suitable cleaning measures in place to prevent contamination and maintain the integrity of your products throughout production, processing and storage.
2. You must monitor your cleaning measures to make sure they are effective and keep records to show that you have done this.
3. If you process or store both non-organic and organic at the same site, you must ensure organic processing or storage is only carried out once suitable cleaning of the equipment and/or storage area(s) has been carried out.  
*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 63(1)(c); Art. 26(4)(a)(b)(5)(e); Art. 35(4)(c)*

### Guidance

For farms this would include cleaning of harvesting or handling equipment, crates and boxes used to store organic produce, grain silos, use in dairies and fruit and vegetable packing areas.

For cleaning chemicals permitted in livestock housing refer to standard 1.12.2 and for aquaculture facilities please refer to the aquaculture standards.

You will need to demonstrate at inspection that your cleaning procedures are appropriate and effective. We will look at how you clean harvesting/handling equipment, storage areas and equipment used for organic production, and how you limit the risk of contamination of organic product from microbial contaminants, from cleaning chemicals, non-permitted substances and from non-organic product.

You will need to ensure your staff, or contractors using their own equipment, are trained to carry out effective cleaning to prevent contamination of your organic products.

Your cleaning procedures need to be clear and need to set out what will be cleaned, how, with what frequency (e.g. daily, weekly, monthly or annually), who is responsible, what chemicals and equipment needs to be used and details of the final rinse of food contact surfaces with potable water (where appropriate).



Records of cleaning measures

#### Cleaning chemicals

Detergents, disinfectants, sterilants and sanitisers allowed for use in the food industry may be used for cleaning equipment and storage areas. Residues of these chemicals must be removed from surfaces in contact with organic food so that they do not contaminate organic products.

Sanitizers containing quaternary ammonium compounds or QACs/QUATs, such as Benzalkonium Chloride (BAC) or Didecyl Dimethyl Ammonium Chloride (DDAC) are difficult to remove from surfaces, and if not adequately rinsed will result in residues in the organic product. Brand names include Deosan, Detsan, Foamsan and Quatsan.

If you use these to clean harvesting/handling equipment, storage boxes, dairy equipment or work surfaces, which are in direct contact with organic products, you need to take measures to ensure they are not contaminating your organic product. For example:

- Switch to a cleaning product that does not contain QACs or other substances difficult to rinse and likely to contaminate products that come in contact with them.
- Check whether your rinsing procedures are sufficient by testing food contact surfaces to ensure no residues remain. For example, a cold water rinse may not be sufficient to remove residues.

#### **Non-dedicated equipment**

Where non-dedicated equipment or storage is used you must be able to demonstrate that the cleaning carried out before it is used for organic products is effective. This may require sampling or swabbing for analysis to demonstrate that the procedures you have in place are effective.

#### **Sprayers**

If you use a non-dedicated sprayer on farm, including any contract sprayers, you will need to demonstrate that the cleaning procedures you have in place eliminate residues of any non-permitted substances to prevent contamination. The normal three rinse procedure may not be effective for many substances.

Even if you do not produce organic, for example, if you just wholesale or transport, cleaning is still important to minimise the risk of contamination. For example, loading equipment and vehicles need to be cleaned and the risk of contamination minimised.


	<p>If you process or store non-organic you will need to have a system for checking that cleaning has been undertaken and that it is effective to remove residues of non-organic material and/or previous production. This could involve visual inspection, micro-biological testing, testing to ensure sanitisers have been removed from organic food contact surfaces, ATP testing.</p>
<p><b>1.12.2 Additional rules for the cleaning and disinfection of livestock buildings and equipment</b></p> <p>1. For the cleaning and disinfection of livestock buildings and equipment you may only use the following products:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) potassium and sodium soap</li> <li>b) water and steam</li> <li>c) milk of lime</li> <li>d) lime</li> <li>e) quicklime</li> <li>f) sodium hypochlorite (for example, as a liquid bleach)</li> <li>g) caustic soda</li> <li>h) caustic potash</li> <li>i) hydrogen peroxide</li> <li>j) natural essences of plants</li> <li>k) citric, peracetic, formic, lactic, oxalic and acetic acid</li> <li>l) alcohol</li> <li>m) phosphoric acid (dairy equipment only)</li> <li>n) nitric acid (dairy equipment only)</li> <li>o) formaldehyde</li> <li>p) cleaning and disinfection products for teats and milking facilities</li> <li>q) sodium carbonate.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(f); Art. 16(1)(e)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 23(4); Annex VII</i></p> <p>2. These products may only be used if they are authorised for your use in your country.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 16(1)</i></p>	

<p><b>1.12.3 Additional rules for the cleaning and disinfection of buildings and installations used for plant production</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For the cleaning and disinfection of buildings and installations used for plant production only authorised products may be used.</li> <li>These products may only be used if they are authorised for your use in your country.</li> </ol> <p><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 12(1)(j); Art. 16(1)</i></p>	<p>Currently there are no substances specifically authorised for cleaning and disinfecting buildings and installations used for plant production.</p> <p>You can use water, steam and products which are permitted for the application on the soil and plants within these standards, such as the permitted pesticides. If you use any other products, you must be able to demonstrate that there is no risk of the products contaminating the soil or plants.</p>
---	--

## 1.13 Pest control

**What is this chapter about?**  
 The standards in this section detail how pests are controlled in and around facilities where you carry out organic activities. Pest control in organic production and storage areas should prevent birds, rodents, insects or other pests contaminating organic foods or spreading disease. Pest control should aim, in the first instance, to prevent infestation rather than depend on treatments.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>1.13.1 Preventing contamination by pests and pest control products</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You must design and operate your buildings and controls to reduce the risk of contamination by pests. In areas used for housing livestock you must remove faeces, urine and uneaten or spilt food as often as necessary to keep smells to a minimum and avoid attracting insects and rodents.</li> <li>You must ensure when implementing preventative measures in organic areas that you take precautionary measures to reduce the risk of contamination of organic products.</li> </ol> <p><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 23(4); Art. 63(1)(c)</i></p>	<p>You will need to demonstrate the measures you have in place to reduce the risk of contamination by pests. This should include measures to prevent and control wild birds, rodents and insects from getting into your buildings such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>fly screens</li> <li>pheromones in traps and dispensers, for monitoring pest levels or as attractants and sexual behaviour disrupters</li> <li>effective covers of waste bins</li> <li>sealing gaps and entry points.</li> </ul>

<p><b>1.13.2 Treating infestations in organic products or areas used for organic products</b></p> <p>If you find an infestation in organic products, on sacks or containers, in areas used for handling/storing organic products or in areas not used for organic products, you must</p>	<p> If you use pest control methods, you will need to keep records of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>what pests you have found</li> <li>what chemicals, methods and equipment you used on them</li> </ul>
--	---

only use pest control methods which do not contaminate the organic product.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 63(1)(c)*

- who did the treatment, when and which area or equipment was treated, and
- what precautions you took to prevent contamination of organic products.

For example, if you need to use pyrethrum as a spray or fog to control insects you must:

- remove all organic products from the area to be treated
- not put organic products back into the treated area for at least 24 hours after the treatment
- you will clean all product contact surfaces in the area, (using methods allowed in Soil Association standards), after the treatment and before you process or store organic product there again
- provide evidence that these measures were undertaken.

Please note that some products have a long residual activity and must only be used in such a manner that the residues will not contaminate the organic product. For example, if you plan to use products that migrate easily, or have longer residual activity such as synthetic pyrethroids, organophosphorous, carbamate or organochlorine compounds then you must put in place additional safeguards to prevent migration or contamination.

Rodenticides must only be used in tamper-proof bait stations and in places where there is no risk of contaminating products.



If you use pest control treatments in areas not used for organic production or storage, you must still assess the risk of contamination and take appropriate preventative measures.

You should make your pest control contractor aware that your unit is handling organic products and that you must comply with pest control procedures in section 1.13 of Soil Association standards.

#### **Control methods on organic products**

Control methods which are appropriate for use on organic products include:

- carbon dioxide or nitrogen

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• freezing and heating</li> <li>• vacuum treatment</li> </ul> <p><b>Control methods in organic areas</b> Control methods which are appropriate for use in organic areas include, but are not limited to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• desiccant dusts such as diatomaceous earth and amorphous silica, preferably from naturally occurring sources</li> <li>• electric flying insect control units, with shatterproof tubes that are positioned and cleaned correctly</li> <li>• tamper resistant bait stations that contain legally approved pesticides</li> <li>• sticky boards for insects</li> <li>• humane electronic rodent repellents such as floor mats</li> </ul>
<p><b>1.13.3 Treating infestations in livestock housing</b> If you find an infestation in areas used for housing organic livestock, you must only use the pest control methods listed in standard 2.6.3, and rodenticides used in accordance with standard 2.6.4. You must ensure that you take precautionary measures to reduce the risk of contamination of organic products or toxicity to livestock. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 23(4); Art. 63(1)(c)</i></p>	<p> If you use pest control methods, you will need to keep records of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• what pests you have found</li> <li>• what chemicals, methods and equipment you used on them</li> <li>• who did the treatment, when and which area or equipment was treated, and</li> <li>• what precautions you took to prevent contamination of organic products and toxicity to livestock.</li> </ul>
<p><b>1.13.4 Using rodent glue boards</b> You may only use glue boards for rodents as a last resort and you must:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) provide evidence to show that other methods of trapping have failed or are not appropriate, before you use the glue boards;</li> <li>b) use them according to industry best practice;</li> <li>c) check rodent glue boards at least once every 12 hours including at weekends and Bank Holidays, as required by the <i>Pest Management Alliance</i> code of practice, and</li> <li>d) keep a record of each check.</li> </ol> <p><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Glue boards should only be used as a last resort and you will need permission from the Certification Team before using them. You will need to let us know what measures you have already tried, such as bait stations and proofing the unit.</p> <p> Records of checks</p> <p>Glue boards should not be viewed as a permanent solution to a pest problem. The Certification Team is able to give you permission to use glue boards but only for short periods of time to allow you to deal with a pest issue. Your pest controller will be able to make recommendations for how many trappings will be required.</p>

This standard applies to the whole licensed unit. However, we recognise that in some cases you may not have ownership or control over the whole site – e.g. if you are renting a room in a storage facility. In these cases you must make all efforts possible to create a dialogue with the building manager and/or the pest control company responsible for the site to ensure that you are consulted prior to use of glue boards, or other pest control measures which could affect your organic status, such as fogging.

See the [Code of Practice on the Humane Use of Rodent Glue Boards](#) for more information.

### Why?

In order to protect public health within high-risk environments, the use of rodent glue boards remains an important last option when all other control methods have been considered and deemed ineffective. However, their use does raise serious animal welfare concerns. This standard ensures that glue boards are only used as a last resort and only by persons who have been given adequate training and are competent in the effective and humane use of this technique.



## 1.14 Transport, dispatch and receipt of goods

### What is this chapter about?

This section details all the standards that need to be met for the transport, dispatch and receipt of organic products.

#### Standards

#### Guidance

##### 1.14.1 Collection of products and transport to preparation units

If you are collecting organic and non-organic products at the same time, you must have measures in place to prevent any possible mixing or exchanges and you must be able to clearly identify the organic products. Your collection records need to indicate the collection days, hours, collection circuit and the time and date when products were received.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 30*



Collection records

##### 1.14.2 Labelling & transporting products

1. If you send an organic product to another company, including retailers, wholesalers and other licensees for further processing, packing or re-labelling then you must:
  - a) ensure it is transported in a way that would prevent substitution.
  - b) label it clearly, either on the product or on accompanying documentation undeniably linked to it so that the recipient can easily identify:
    - (i) the product and its organic status
    - (ii) the name and address of the operator, and, if different, the seller or owner of the product
  - c) include your certification code, traceability code and % organic content of the product (if less than 95%). If this information is provided on the accompanying documentation, it must also include information on the supplier and/or transporter.
2. You do not need to use closed packaging, containers or vehicles if:
  - a) transportation is between two organically certified operators

For additional requirements for labelling of retail packed products, please refer to section 1.8.




If your product is not prepacked for retail, or it goes on for further processing, you can put ingredient information either on the label, or on a document with the product provided it can be clearly linked with the product. For example, grain moved from a dryer to a mill would need to be accompanied by a delivery note with full supplier address, product information (including organic status), batch, haulier and vehicle identification and consignee address.

Labelled packaging helps identify organic products and keeps them sealed which limits the risk of contamination and substitution. However, there are products that need to be transported in loose bulk, for example milk in a tanker or fruit and vegetables in open top boxes.



Records of transportation of loose organic products

However you choose to transport your products, you will need to make sure you have minimised the risk of contamination or substitution with non-organic products by using clear labelling and separation. For example, if you are transporting loose fruit and vegetables in open top boxes, consider transporting the organic or non-organic in separate vans. Or, close the tops of the boxes

<p>b) products are accompanied by a document containing the information required in point 1b above</p> <p>c) both the sending and receiving operators keep records of the transportation.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 31(1)(2)</i></p>	<p>containing organic to prevent accidental contamination.</p>
<p>3. You must include the words 'Soil Association <b>Organic</b>' or the Soil Association symbol on the packaging of products certified according to Soil Association standards.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p style="color: blue;">Why?</p> <p>Soil Association certified products have been produced and processed to organic standards that are higher than the GB organic regulation.  <b>Writing 'Soil Association Organic' on the packaging helps to identify products that have met these higher standards.</b></p>	
<p><b>1.14.3 Receiving organic products</b></p> <p>When you receive an organic product you must check, upon delivery that the product is labelled according to standard 1.14.2 above and packed appropriately so that it cannot be mistaken or mixed up with other products. You must crosscheck that the label on the product matches the information on the accompanying documents and provide an account of how you check goods upon receipt.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 33</i></p>	<p>When receiving goods from other units or operators you need to have a system in place for checking the organic status of the products and have records to show these checks are always made.</p> <p> Please see the record keeping section 1.7 for details of the information you will need to record.</p> <p>If you cannot be sure about the organic status of a delivery, for example if information is missing or incorrect, you will need to either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• get written confirmation from the supplier</li> <li>• send it back</li> <li>• sell it as non-organic</li> <li>• use it in non-organic products.</li> </ul>
<p><b>1.14.4 Additional rules for transporting feed</b></p> <p>1. In addition to standard 1.14.2, when transporting feed you must:</p> <p>a) ensure that the transport of organic feed, in-conversion feed and non-organic feed is effectively separated physically</p> <p>b) ensure that the transport of finished organic feed is effectively separated physically or in time from the transport of other finished products</p> <p>c) label it clearly, either on the product or on</p>	<p> Records of cleaning measures</p> <p> Records of all transport operations</p>

<p>accompanying documentation undeniably linked to it so that the recipient can easily identify:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i) the product or a description of the compound feedstuff and its organic status.</li> <li>ii) the name and address of the operator, and, if different, the seller or owner of the product.</li> </ol> <p>2. If you use vehicles or containers that have been used to transport non-organic products, you must:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) ensure they are thoroughly clean before transporting organic products. The cleaning measures used must be appropriate to the risks, and the effectiveness of the measures must be checked before transporting organic products.</li> <li>b) assess and implement measures to ensure that non-organic feed cannot be mistaken or mixed up with organic. Where necessary you may be asked to guarantee this.</li> <li>c) keep documentary records of these transport operations.</li> </ol> <p>3. You must keep records of transport operations, including the quantity of products at the start and of each individual quantity delivered.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 31(1)(b); Art. 32</i></p>	
---	--

<h2 style="color: #4F81BD;">1.15 Storage of products</h2>	
<h3 style="color: #4F81BD;">What is this chapter about?</h3>	
<p>This section details the standards for storing and handling organic products.</p>	
<h3>Standards</h3>	<h3>Guidance</h3>
<p><b style="color: #4F81BD;">1.15.1 General separation</b></p> <p>You must manage your organic storage areas and containers in such a way to avoid any mixing with or contamination from products or substances that we do not allow in these standards. Your organic storage areas, containers and products must be clearly identifiable at all times.</p>	<p>Demonstrate that your organic products are clearly identified and separated from areas used for other purposes. Examples include, but are not limited to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>identify the room, area, or racking with the word 'organic' to show that it is for storing organic products</b></li> <li>• identify all organic materials clearly to avoid accidental contamination</li> </ul>

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 35(1)*

- have sufficient space or barriers around the organic storage area to stop accidental contamination
- only use stores, bins and containers that are made of materials suitable for contact with the food they are to store
- dedicate and identify bins and containers as organic
- prevent contamination by birds, insects and vermin
- clean the stores regularly so that there are no residues which could contaminate organic products or encourage pests.

Also refer to the 'preserving organic integrity' section, for details of contamination, and products and substances we do not allow.

### 1.15.2 Handling and separating organic and non-organic products

When you use the same equipment and premises to store and handle both organic and non-organic products you must:

- a) minimise the risk of mixing organic products with other products and foodstuffs by clearly identifying and separating them during the production process, and
- b) effectively clean equipment and storage areas used to handle or store non-organic products before handling or storing organic products.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 35(4); 26 (3)*

Refer to the 'preserving organic integrity' section 1.11, for details of contamination and products and substances we do not allow.

### 1.15.3 Storing unauthorised inputs on organic units is prohibited

The storage of inputs in organic plant, seaweed, livestock and aquaculture production units, which are not permitted under these standards is prohibited.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 35(2)*

1.16 Packaging	
Standards	Guidance
<p><b>1.16.1 Scope</b></p> <p>These standards apply to packaging of products that you introduce into the supply chain.</p> <p>We define packaging as all primary (retail), secondary (grouping, display) and tertiary (transport) materials used for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• containing</li> <li>• protecting</li> <li>• preserving</li> <li>• handling</li> <li>• storage</li> <li>• delivery</li> <li>• labelling</li> <li>• marketing, and</li> <li>• presentation of your products.</li> </ul> <p>Note - we include bulk bins but not transport pallets in this definition.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p><b>I</b> Packaging legislation</p> <p>Keep in mind that you must make sure that your packaging meets all relevant legislation relating to packaging, packaging waste and materials in contact with food.</p> <p>For example, for products sold in the UK and EU such legislation would include, but is not limited to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. the <a href="#">European Parliament and Council Directive on Packaging and Packaging Waste (94/62/EC)</a></li> <li>2. the <a href="#">European Standard for Compostable Packaging (EN13432)</a> – if you are using compostable or biodegradable packaging.</li> </ol> <p>Environmental information claims and symbols on your packaging need to be clear, truthful and accurate. In the UK, you will need to make sure your packaging conforms to <a href="#">Defra's Green Claims code</a>.</p>
<p><b>Why?</b></p> <p>The production, use and disposal of packaging can have a big impact on the environment and human health. We believe that organic products should be packaged in ways that reduce the negative impacts of packaging. This fits with the principles of protecting the environment and biodiversity that underpin organic food and farming, and meets consumer expectations of organic products.</p> <p>Packaging serves an important role in preventing food waste by protecting and extending the shelf life of products. It also helps to protect consumers by preventing contamination and substitution of organic products with non-organic alternatives. These packaging standards aim to maximise the benefits and avoid the negative impacts of packaging.</p>	
Standards	Guidance
<p><b>1.16.2 Cellulose-based materials</b></p> <p>If you use cellulose-based materials, such as corrugate, bleached paper or cardboard, it must be totally chlorine free (TCF) or elemental chlorine free (ECF). Recycled paper must be process chlorine free (PCF).</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Demonstrate that you have not used these materials, for example by having written confirmation from your supplier.</p>

### Why?

The use of chlorine bleaching has a high environmental impact and its manufacture can result in the release of toxic chemicals such as dioxins and other pollutants.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>1.16.3 Aluminium foils</b> You must <b>not</b> use unlacquered aluminium foils to package food which is acidic (with a pH less than or equal to 4.5) or salty (containing more than 2% salt). <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Demonstrate that you have not used these materials, for example by having written confirmation from your supplier.</p>

### Why?

**Aluminium has been linked with the onset of Alzheimer's disease and other degenerative mental states. Lacquering the foil prevents the aluminium from reacting with food acids. Producing safe and healthy food is an important principle of organic food processing.**

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>1.16.4 Plastic materials, coatings, dyes or inks</b> You must <b>not</b> use plastic materials, coatings, dyes or inks that contain phthalates if they will be in direct contact with foodstuffs. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Demonstrate that you have not used these materials, for example by having written confirmation from your supplier.</p>

### Why?

Phthalates can have a negative impact on human health, for example they have endocrine disrupting properties.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>1.16.5 PVC</b> You must <b>not</b> use polyvinyl chloride (PVC) unless alternative materials are not available or are functionally unsuitable, as listed in the guidance section of this standard. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Demonstrate that you have not used these materials, for example by having written confirmation from your supplier.</p> <p>You may use other chlorinated plastics, such as PVdC.</p> <p>There are some specific circumstances where we are aware that no suitable alternatives to PVC currently exist yet. These include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• metal jar lids or caps (e.g. for jams, sauces and baby food), and</li><li>• tamper evident seals on jar lids or caps.</li></ul> <p><b>The Soil Association's Packaging Working Group will review this list on a regular basis.</b></p>

	<p>You may use metal jar lids, caps and tamper evident seals that contain PVC, however you will need to make your packaging supplier aware that a PVC free alternative is preferable should it become available.</p> <p>PVC film overwrap may be used where a non-PVC film is unavailable in suitable quantities or is not fit for purpose. If you wish to use a PVC film wrap please contact the Certification Team. We will need evidence from you and your suppliers that a PVC free alternative is either not available or not suitable for the purpose you intend. You may continue to use PVC in these cases until a suitable alternative becomes available. Each year we will contact you to see if you have found a suitable PVC free alternative.</p>
--	--

*Why?*

The production, use and disposal of PVC is associated with a range of environmental and human health issues. PVC often contains additives which are added to improve flexibility and plasticity, including phthalates. PVC can also contain other toxic substances such as chlorinated paraffins, organic tin compounds and alkyl phenols.

The environmental hazards of PVC go beyond those associated with other plastics. Some of today's most worrying environmental contaminants are released during the production of PVC or its feedstocks and during the disposal of PVC products.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>1.16.6 Non-GM packaging</b>            You must <b>not</b> use packaging materials or substances that contain, have been derived from, or manufactured using genetically modified organisms or genetically engineered enzymes, unless alternative materials are functionally unsuitable or not available, as indicated in the guidance section of this standard.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Adequate demonstration of non-GM for packaging materials includes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Raw materials made from organic crops</li> <li>• Non-GMO Project certification</li> <li>• IP or PCR testing results for the raw materials</li> </ul> <p>Polylactic acid (PLA) is sometimes used for compostable or biodegradable packaging. PLA is a biopolymer made from natural sugar sources and many of these sugar sources are high GM risk (such as sugar beet and maize).</p> <p>Only PLA from non-GM sources can be used in the packaging of organic products. This includes teabags. You will need to provide a non-GM declaration to prove the PLA is not produced from or by GM.</p> <p>There are some cases where it is not possible to trace the source feedstock of packaging materials in order to verify whether or not it is derived from GM, or</p>

	<p>there are no suitable alternative options which are non-GM. An example of this is lids containing epoxydised soybean oil (ESBO). In cases where there is no functional alternative, we can give you permission to use the packaging. This permission would be subject to annual review and may be revoked should a technological alternative appear on the market in sufficient quantity.</p> <p>Any permissions granted will be reviewed by the Soil Association's Certification Committee on an annual basis.</p> <p>This standard also applies to cotton teabag strings. Using organic teabag strings means you automatically meet the requirements of this standard. If your tea bag strings are non-organic you will need to provide details of the country of origin of the cotton used in them, and/or an IP certificate to prove they are not made with genetically modified cotton.</p>
<p>Why?</p> <p>Genetic modification is counter to the principles and practice of organic food and farming and does not meet consumer expectation of organic products. Whilst most packaging derived from GM materials no longer contain GM DNA, they are still derived from raw materials which have been genetically modified.</p>	
Standards	Guidance
<p><a href="#">1.16.7 BPA and other bisphenols in food-contact materials*</a></p> <p>You must not intentionally use Bisphenol A (BPA) or other bisphenols in materials that will be in direct contact with foodstuffs.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p> <p><a href="#">*This Standard comes in to effect from May 2020</a></p>	<p>Bisphenol A (BPA) is a chemical found in some plastics and used in the manufacture of epoxy resins. It is commonly found in the linings of some food and beverage cans. Alternatives to BPA include epoxy-phenolic, modified polyester and acrylic.</p> <p><b>The wording 'intentionally use' refers to the fact that some materials are classified as BPA-NI, where "NI" stands for 'non-intentional'. This classification means that although there is no BPA added as a constituent of a lacquer, BPA may be present in the pipework, raw material packaging, processing equipment etc. and small amounts may be picked up by the finished product during production. Although you should avoid them where possible, you can still use BPA-NI materials for the time being. We will monitor the situation with BPA-NI materials with a view to totally eradicating BPA from all food contact materials in due course.</b></p>



Type 7 plastics may be made from BPA. Type 3 plastics (PVC) could also contain BPA, but only in the case of flexible PVC which is prohibited under standard 1.16.5 of these standards.

Demonstrate that you have not used BPA or other bisphenols in your food contact materials, for example by having written confirmation from your supplier.

In order to allow time for licensees to source and trial alternative materials, this standard will be enforced from May 2020 but licensees should switch to bisphenol-free food contact materials as soon as possible.

#### Why?

Studies have shown that BPA has endocrine disrupting properties and toxic effects on our ability to reproduce. Studies have also raised serious concerns over other bisphenols that are sometimes used as an alternative to BPA, such as BPAF, BPB and BPZ. The toxic effects of Bisphenols are evident even at low concentrations.

## 2.0 Standards for organic land and crops

### 2.1 Converting land and crops to organic production

#### What's this chapter about?

This section covers conversion periods for land and various types of crops. It also includes standards for retroactive approval of conversion periods and Soil Association higher standards protecting the conversion of land which has high conservation value.

#### Standards

#### Guidance

##### 2.1.1 Starting your conversion

Your conversion period starts on the date you inform your certification body that you wish to use the land for Soil Association certified production or when your certification body has determined that you comply with these organic standards. During the conversion period you must comply with these organic standards.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 17(1)(a)(b)*

New land may enter conversion from the date that the application is received by Soil Association Certification (or a specified date thereafter). If it cannot be verified at inspection that organic standards have been met since the conversion start date, livestock that have grazed this land could lose status.

You can convert your farm in separate units over a longer time period. Land and livestock conversion can start at different dates. The Certification Team can provide further details.

You may also wish to consider the requirements for organic grant payments.

##### 2.1.2 Conversion periods for land and crops

1. For land and crops to be considered organic, the organic production rules as referred to in these organic standards must have been applied to the land from the agreed start date of conversion for the following periods:

- a) all land - 24 months
- b) crops grown on your land:
  - i. arable and horticultural crops – 24 months before the sowing or planting of the organic crops
  - ii. grass – 24 months before grazing or cutting for organic hay or silage
  - iii. perennial crops already in the ground (other than grass or forage) – 36 months before harvesting organic crops.

2. Your competent authority may decide that your conversion period is extended or declared unsuitable for conversion if your land has been contaminated by products not permitted in these standards.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 17(1)(c)*

You must provide details of known historical environmental pollution or use of prohibited substances that may be present beyond the normal conversion period.

We may take soil samples to determine if your conversion period needs to be extended.

In GB the competent authority is Defra.

<p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 36(1)(3)</i> <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 17(1)(b)</i></p>	
<p><b>2.1.3 Reducing conversion periods</b></p> <p>1. Your conversion period may be reduced if you can demonstrate that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) the land has been managed under a recognised agri-environmental scheme which prohibits any pesticides or fertilisers that these organic standards do not allow, or</li> <li>b) the land has not been treated with any products prohibited under these organic standards for at least three years.</li> </ul> <p>2. Your competent authority must approve any reduction.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 17(e)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 36(2)</i></p>	<p>To request a reduction in your conversion period of less than four months you need to be able to demonstrate, at your inspection, that you have not used anything we do not allow in these organic standards on this land for the period of this reduction.</p> <p>To request a reduction in your conversion period of over four months, you need to get permission from your competent authority. In GB the competent authority is Defra. It is likely that we will need to see third party verification that no prohibited inputs have been used. For example, Countryside Stewardship agreements with confirmation from the scheme managers that no prohibited substances have been used.</p>
<p><b>2.1.4 Compulsory treatment of land with prohibited products</b></p> <p>1. If you have to treat an area of your organic land or land in the process of conversion with anything these organic standards do not allow as part of a compulsory pest or disease control scheme, or as part of a scientific test approved by your competent authority, you must notify your certification body. It will have to go through another conversion period.</p> <p>2. The conversion period may be reduced based on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) the material used and how quickly it will break down in the soil or plant material</li> <li>b) when the next harvest (which cannot be sold as organic) is, and</li> <li>c) approval from your competent authority.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 36(4)</i></p>	<p>Provide us with details of the compulsory control scheme or scientific test including the products used and the next harvest date. We will inform your competent authority and they will decide if the re-conversion period can be reduced. In GB the competent authority is Defra.</p>
<p><b>2.1.5 Selling in-conversion crops</b></p> <p>Your in-conversion crops can be labelled as ‘product under conversion to organic farming’ provided that:</p>	<p>We can provide you with a Trading Schedule showing crops that are eligible to sell as in-conversion.</p>

<p>a) the land that the crop is grown on has completed one year of conversion before harvesting the crop</p> <p>b) <b>the phrase 'product under conversion to organic farming' is not</b> more prominent in colour, size and style of lettering than the sales description of the product</p> <p>c) <b>the words 'organic farming' are not</b> more prominent <b>than the words 'product under conversion to'</b></p> <p>d) the product contains only one crop ingredient of agricultural origin</p> <p>e) the label does not include the Soil Association symbol or the EU organic logo.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 25 (1)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 62</i></p>	
<p><b>2.1.6 Switching land between organic and non-organic management</b></p> <p>You must not switch your land back and forth between organic and non-organic management.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>If you are planning to reconvert land which was previously under organic management you must inform us:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• when the land was taken out of organic management, and</li> <li>• the reasons for this.</li> </ul> <p>If land was treated as part of a compulsory pest or disease control scheme, or as part of a scientific test we may allow you to reconvert your land back to organic.</p>
<p><b>Why?</b></p> <p>We prevent producers taking land out of organic management in order to treat the land with chemicals to try and tackle pest and disease problems. We encourage and support our producers to solve these problems through organic practices, such as rotating crops and selecting varieties with a natural resistance to pests and diseases. This not only reduces the impact to the natural environment, but often offers better long term solutions to pest and disease problems.</p>	
<p><b>2.1.7 Maintaining High Conservation Values*</b></p> <p>Any conversion of land undertaken for organic production must maintain:</p> <p>a) any High Conservation Values, or</p> <p>b) any sites or resources necessary to maintain those High Conservation Values.</p> <p>There are six High Conservation Values. Only one category needs to be met for an area of land to have High Conservation Value. These are:</p>	<p>This standard applies to the maintenance of High Conservation Values (HCV) identified on your land, during any change of land use, irrespective of whether the land was previously managed or unmanaged, organic or non-organic.</p> <p>You must identify High Conservation Values on your land using the guidance below.</p> <p>You must inform us if any planned changes of land use are likely to affect the High Conservation Values you have identified <b>on your land</b>. <b>By the term 'land use change', we mean for example meadow becoming woodland, permanent</b></p>

**HCV 1:** Concentrations of biological diversity including endemic species, and rare, threatened or endangered species that are significant at global, regional or national levels.

**HCV 2:** Intact forest landscapes and large landscape-level ecosystems and ecosystem mosaics that are significant at global, regional or national levels, and that contain viable populations of the great majority of the naturally occurring species in natural patterns of distribution and abundance.

**HCV 3:** Rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems, habitats or refugia.

**HCV 4:** Basic ecosystem services in critical situations, including protection of water catchments and control of erosion of vulnerable soils and slopes.

**HCV 5:** Sites and resources fundamental for satisfying the basic necessities of local communities or indigenous peoples (for livelihoods, health, nutrition, water etc.), identified through engagement with these communities or indigenous peoples.

**HCV 6:** Sites, resources, habitats and landscapes of global or national cultural, archaeological or historical significance, and/or of critical cultural, ecological, economic or religious/sacred importance for the traditional cultures of local communities or indigenous peoples, identified through engagement with these local communities or indigenous peoples.

*Soil Association higher standard*

pasture becoming arable, hedges being removed, buffer strips along a watercourse being removed, undisturbed land being cultivated.

If your planned changes are likely to have an impact on High Conservation Values, you must inform us prior to the changes taking place. We will ask you to demonstrate that your proposed changes will have a positive impact (or not negatively impact) the identified conservation values. A template is available on request.

### **Guidance on the presence of HCVs in the UK**

In the absence of a [National Interpretation](#) for High Conservation Values, we have developed the following guidance which acknowledges that in the UK, there are a range of legal safeguards in place to protect HCVs complemented by agri-environment scheme requirements, some of which are monitored by statutory bodies. A checklist is available [online](#) or on request.

**HCV 1:** SSSIs and ASSIs are monitored by statutory nature conservation bodies who would need to give consent prior to land use changes. You are also responsible for protecting Protected Species.

**HCV 2:** There are no HCV 2 sites in the UK.

**HCV 3:** The lists of Special Areas of Conservation ([SACs](#)), Special Protection Areas (SPAs), and SSSIs can help you identify any statutory designations or rare ecosystems on your land. These are monitored by statutory nature conservation bodies who would need to give consent prior to land use changes.

Sites of Importance for Nature Conservation (SINCs, also known as SNCIs or Local Wildlife Sites) are non-statutory sites with locally identified conservation value.

Land use changes of uncultivated land and semi-natural areas are subject to the *Environmental Impact Assessment (Agriculture) Regulations*.

The *UK BAP Priority Habitats list* includes hedgerows, ponds, arable field margins, traditional orchards, wetlands, and several types of woodland/meadows/grassland/heathland as [Priority Habitats](#) for conservation. Any habitat on this list counts as HCV3.

	<p><b>HCV 4:</b> HCV 4 areas can largely be protected through compliance with the organic standards (which address risks such as low ground cover, pollution, soil disturbance, soil erosion) though additional management not specifically mentioned may be required e.g. effective slope management and effective water catchment management.</p> <p><b>HCV 5:</b> You must consider the impact of your land use change on local communities – particularly if communities are reliant on your land for livestock fodder, renewable energy (e.g. biofuel feedstock), satisfying their basic food security needs (e.g. by fishing, hunting, gathering wild foods), or if your changes could impact the quality or volume of local water resources necessary for drinking or sanitation. HCV 5 is most relevant in places with little or no water or electricity infrastructure, and greater degrees of subsistence farming.</p> <p><b>HCV 6:</b> Statutory-recognised and -enforced designations exist for UNESCO World Heritage Sites, scheduled monuments, listed buildings, scheduled monuments in fields, Conservation Areas, AONBs, National Scenic Areas, National Parks and UNESCO cultural landscapes. Any religious or sacred sites, burial grounds or sites at which traditional ceremonies take place which do not hold official designations would also count as HCV 6 if the site is important to local people.</p>
<p><b>2.1.8 Past clearance of natural ecosystems</b> Where land was cleared or otherwise converted to agriculture after January 2007 without a prior HCV assessment, this land cannot be used for organic production except where evidence is provided that natural ecosystems were not destroyed.</p> <p>There are six High Conservation Values. Only one category needs to be met for an area of land to have High Conservation Value. These are:</p> <p><b>HCV 1:</b> Concentrations of biological diversity including endemic species, and rare, threatened or endangered species that are significant at global, regional or national levels.</p>	<p><b>Natural ecosystems</b> If you are converting land that may have been cleared after January 2007 you will need to provide evidence that natural ecosystems were not destroyed. Natural ecosystems are defined as ecosystems that resemble, in terms of species composition, structure, and function, those that are or would be found in a given area in the absence of significant human management impacts. This includes: Forests, tree-covered areas that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>are not occupied by agriculture or other specific non-forest land uses</b></li> <li>• <b>consist primarily of native plant species, and</b></li> <li>• <b>contain a vegetation structure that generally resembles that of a natural forest of the same age in the same area.</b></li> </ul>

**HCV 2:** Intact forest landscapes and large landscape-level ecosystems and ecosystem mosaics that are significant at global, regional or national levels, and that contain viable populations of the great majority of the naturally occurring species in natural patterns of distribution and abundance.

**HCV 3:** Rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems, habitats or refugia.

**HCV 4:** Basic ecosystem services in critical situations, including protection of water catchments and control of erosion of vulnerable soils and slopes.

**HCV 5:** Sites and resources fundamental for satisfying the basic necessities of local communities or indigenous peoples (for livelihoods, health, nutrition, water etc.), identified through engagement with these communities or indigenous peoples.

**HCV 6:** Sites, resources, habitats and landscapes of global or national cultural, archaeological or historical significance, and/or of critical cultural, ecological, economic or religious/sacred importance for the traditional cultures of local communities or indigenous peoples, identified through engagement with these local communities or indigenous peoples.

*Soil Association higher standard*

The following types of tree-covered areas are not considered natural ecosystems:

- **forestry or fruit tree plantations**
- **tree**-covered areas that are managed as diversified food production systems, including traditional and modern management systems such as home gardens, agroforestry systems, and mixed tree-cattle systems, or
- **areas that are managed as long**-rotation swidden (shifting cultivation) systems under traditional, indigenous people, communities, or smallholder land-use systems (even if they otherwise meet the definitions of natural ecosystems) and fallow lands for soil fertility recovery purposes.

Remote sensing tools such as [Global Forest Watch](#) and [Global Forest Change](#) Landsat mapping can be used to identify tree cover loss and land-use change.

### Why?

Expansion of agriculture globally has resulted in the destruction of millions of hectares of forests and other natural or important ecosystems to make way for farming, with negative impacts on biodiversity, climate and indigenous peoples.

We prohibit the clearing of land which has high conservation value to create organic agricultural land. We use the HCV definition to identify and prohibit the clearing of areas that are critically important because of their environmental, socioeconomic, biodiversity or landscape values.





## 2.2 Managing organic and non-organic enterprises

### What is the chapter about?

This section contains standards on how separation must be maintained in cases where both conventional and organic production occurs within the same holding.

### Standards


#### 2.2.1 Simultaneous organic and non-organic production

1. If you have organic and non-organic production units on the same holding you must:
  - a) clearly define your units of land used for organic and non-organic production
  - b) keep the organic and non-organic production and storage areas clearly separate
  - c) **not** store products that are **not** allowed under these organic standards on your organic unit
  - d) keep adequate records to show separation
  - e) not have organic and non-organic livestock of the same species
  - f) not grow organic and non-organic crops of the same variety
  
2. If your holding or unit is partly under organic production and partly in conversion to organic production, you must keep the organically produced and in-conversion products separate and the animals separate or readily separable and keep adequate records to show separation.  
*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 11; Art. 17(1)(d)*  
*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 35 (1); 40 (1)*

### Guidance

You may use the same equipment for organic and non-organic production provided it is cleaned between uses to prevent contamination.

We will inspect both the organic and non-organic production areas.

 Records demonstrating adequate separation of organic and non-organic production

In GB, Defra the competent authority defines clearly separate units as physically, financially and operationally separate.

Physically separate:

- your non-organic unit must have distinct blocks of land which are separate from your organic unit
- we do not allow a mosaic of organic and non-organic fields
- organic and non-organic units can be next to each other but there must be a barrier between them, such as a hedge or fence.

Financially separate:

- you must keep separate financial records
- you must be able to clearly identify invoices for each unit.

Operationally separate:

- you must demonstrate that you manage the organic unit as a distinct and separate operation
- you can use shared cultivation equipment
- you must show how you separate organic and non-organic in housing, machinery, equipment for feed, milling and mixing and parlours
- your non-organic unit may have the same holding number but may not have the same herd or flock numbers.

	Refer to standards 2.2.2 and 2.2.3. for detailed rules on growing non-organic and organic crops and to section 3.3 for detailed rules on keeping organic and non-organic livestock.
<p><b>2.2.2 Growing non-organic crops</b>          If you grow the same crops on your non-organic land as on your in-conversion or organic land this is called parallel production. In these cases your certification body must be able to easily identify different varieties on each area.  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 11</i></p>	
<p><b>2.2.3 Parallel production exceptions</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <b>You may 'parallel produce' only the following:</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) perennial crops which are grown for at least three years</li> <li>b) seeds, vegetative propagating material or transplants</li> <li>c) grassland used only for grazing</li> <li>d) crops grown for agricultural research or crops and livestock on farms used for formal education, only with agreement from your competent authority.</li> </ol> </li>   <li>2. In addition (with the exception of grassland for grazing), <b>you may 'parallel produce' only if you:</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) permanently separate the products from each unit</li> <li>b) tell your certification body at least 48 hours before you harvest each crop</li> <li>c) tell your certification body the exact quantities harvested and confirm you have kept the products separate</li> <li>d) get approval from your certification body each year, and</li> <li>e) for perennial crops only agree with your certification body, to convert the whole area concerned within five years.</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 11; Art. 22(2)(a)</i>  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 40(1)</i></p> </li> </ol>	<p>If the organic and non-organic operations are run as separate businesses, this does not apply.</p> <p>In GB the competent authority is Defra.</p>

## 2.3 Environmental management and conservation

### What is this chapter about?

This chapter details the obligations of organic farmers to protect the environment. Organic farming aims to produce food while maintaining and contributing to the preservation of natural areas and the wider environment. Organic farming is rooted within living ecological systems and benefits from working with the natural environment. Using practices that attract or introduce beneficial insects, provide habitat for predatory birds and mammals and increase soil biodiversity fulfil vital ecological functions in organic production systems.

### Standards

#### 2.3.1 Biodiversity conservation and enhancement

Your production activities must contribute to high levels of biodiversity and the protection of ecologically significant habitats. You must take into account the local or regional ecological balance when taking production decisions.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 3(a)(i)(ii); Art. 5(d)*

### Guidance

- Identify on your farm maps any ecologically significant habitats, such as water courses, wetlands, open water, springs, woodlands, large native trees, lowland meadows, ridge and furrow fields, hedgerows, heathlands or rare habitats as declared by local law that are part of your holding or affected by your activities on your holding.
- Include any statutory, non-statutory, local wildlife sites and Biodiversity Action Priority (BAP) habitats.
- In the UK the [MAGIC](#) website provides geographic information on the location and type of priority habitats.
- Describe the measures you will implement to ensure these areas and habitats are protected and/or enhanced.



Any practices that may damage statutory, non-statutory or local wildlife sites or ecologically significant habitats are prohibited. For example, ploughing species rich or unimproved grasslands.


Here is a [link](#) to the list of BAP priority habitats in the UK.

Resources on wildlife and habitat conservation are available from Natural England, Scottish National Heritage, Natural Resources Wales or Northern Ireland Environment Agency. Where UK statutory bodies are responsible for designation and monitoring of wildlife sites, they can offer advice on habitat management.



Statutory recognised sites include:

- Internationally important wildlife sites

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Special Protection Area (EU birds directive)</li> <li>• Special Area of Conservation (EU habitats directive)</li> <li>• RAMSAR site (convention on wetlands of international importance)</li> </ul> <p>Nationally important wildlife sites in the UK</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Site of Special Scientific Interest (Wildlife and Countryside Act 1981 and Countryside and Rights of Way Act 2000)</li> <li>• National Nature Reserve</li> </ul> <p>Non-statutory or local sites may be described by a range of terms including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wildlife site</li> <li>• Site of Nature Conservation Importance (SNCI)</li> <li>• Site of Importance for Nature Conservation (SINC), or</li> <li>• Regionally Important Geological Site (RIGS).</li> </ul> <p> The bodies that designate and monitor the non-statutory and local sites are either your local authority or the local Wildlife Trusts. Information is also sometimes held by County Environmental Record Centres.</p>
<p><b>2.3.2 Preventing environmental contamination</b>  You must carefully manage your plant production techniques to avoid or minimise contaminating the environment.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 12(f)</i></p>	<p>Consider all aspects of your management practices and how they might impact on the environment.  These can include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• soil</li> <li>• manure, milk, slurry, silage and other effluents</li> <li>• plastics</li> <li>• supplementary nutrient inputs</li> <li>• pest and disease control products</li> <li>• fuel</li> <li>• waste products</li> <li>• dirty water</li> <li>• leftover foot bath solution and spent dip</li> <li>• redundant machinery and batteries</li> </ul> <p>Where you identify risks, describe how you will minimise these. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• how you avoid run-off and the pollution of ground water</li> <li>• how you avoid the loss of nutrients to the air and water</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• how you ensure sufficient storage capacity for livestock manure and slurry</li> <li>• how you assess water pollution risk</li> <li>• compliance with statutory rules (e.g. Code of good practise, NVZ rules, Silage, Slurry and Agricultural Fuel Oil (SSAFO) regulations in the UK).</li> </ul> <p>Pest and disease control products such as sheep dip may not meet these organic standards. If you have any queries please contact the Certification Team.</p>
<p><b>2.3.3 Making responsible use of resources</b>          You must use energy, water and other natural resources responsibly. You must reduce or minimise your use of non-renewable resources and off-farm inputs.  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 3(iii)</i>  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 5(b)</i></p>	<p>Identify which resources you use and ensure you use them efficiently.          For example, for energy use:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What type of energy you use (renewables, electricity, gas, CO<sub>2</sub>) for which purposes.</li> <li>• How you record this use.</li> <li>• How you minimise the use, e.g. using smart technology, ensuring buildings are well insulated, ventilated and draught-proofed.</li> <li>• Ensure heating and cooling systems have functioning timers and thermostats. Adapt their use according to weather conditions.</li> <li>• Purchase energy-efficient equipment, keep equipment well-maintained and switch it off when not in use.</li> <li>• Drive vehicles efficiently, ensuring correct tyre pressures.</li> </ul> <p>Burning fuel solely to produce carbon dioxide for use in protected cropping is not sustainable and does not meet this standard.</p> <p>For example, for water use, including irrigation and abstraction:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure you use water efficiently.</li> <li>• Consider systems for rainwater capture, storage and use.</li> <li>• Monitor your use of water to ensure you minimise wastage and optimise soil water content.</li> <li>• Identify areas prone to run off and soil erosion, and adopt appropriate strategies to minimise these. Strategies might include selecting suitable stock type and levels, under-sowing, inter-cropping systems, non-inversion and contour cultivation, herbage strips and overwinter green covers.</li> <li>• Minimise the amount of dirty water you have to dispose of.</li> <li>• Identify any local drainage basin management issues.</li> </ul>

## 2.4 Managing your soil

### What is this chapter about?

Organic production is based on nourishing plants primarily through the soil ecosystem. This section details how an organic production system maintains and enhances natural soil fertility, good soil structure, stability and biodiversity, preventing and combatting soil compaction and soil erosion.

### Standards

#### 2.4.1 Managing your soil

1. Your plants must be nourished primarily through the soil ecosystem. The organic matter, fertility and biological activity of the soil must be maintained and increased primarily by;
  - a) varied crop rotation
  - b) legumes
  - c) green manure crops
  - d) application of livestock manure or organic material preferably composted and from organic production.
2. The soil must be managed to enhance stability, soil organic matter levels and soil structure and to prevent compaction, erosion and run-off.
3. Mineral nitrogen fertilisers cannot be used.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 5(a)(c); Art. 12(1)(a)(b)(e)*

### Guidance

Your system should:

- build and maintain the health of your soil
- maximise the efficient use of nutrients
- minimise the use of brought-in inputs
- minimise the risk of soil and water run-off, flooding, wind, and soil erosion
- maintain good soil structure

If your crop or livestock management is not delivering these objectives then you need to review and amend your practices accordingly.

In systems where crop rotation is not possible, you need to demonstrate that you are building and maintaining soil fertility by other means.

The main examples of production systems where you cannot produce crops within a rotation are:

- permanent pastures, including upland habitats
- perennial crops such as orchards, vineyards and plantation crops.

We may require evidence that soil fertility is being maintained. This may be through soil testing results and/or yield records.

Poaching, overgrazing and damage to grass and soil in pasture can be minimised by:

- reducing or removing stock when soils are wet
- moving stock to new pasture
- moving feeders and water troughs at regular intervals or installing them onto permanent hard standing
- avoiding using heavy machinery on wet grassland
- restricting access to wet areas of the field and rivers/streams/pond banks.

## 2.4.2 Hydroponics


Hydroponic production is prohibited.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 4*

## 2.5 Fertilisers and soil conditioners

### What is this chapter about?

This section covers standards for the fertilisers and soil conditioners that you can use in Soil Association crop production and the conditions for their use.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>2.5.1 The use of fertilisers and soil conditioners is restricted</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You may only use the fertilisers, soil conditioners and nutrients in standards 2.5.2, if the measures and practices required in standard 2.4.1 are not adequate to meet the nutritional needs of your plants.</li> <li>You must keep records which demonstrate why you need to use the product(s).</li> <li>The use of these products is subject to the specific conditions in the table below. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 12(d)(e); Art. 16(1)(b)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 3(1)</i></li> <li>The products in the table below may only be used if they are authorised for your intended use in your country. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 16(1)</i></li> </ol>	<p>You must plan your production system to minimise the need for brought-in nutrients. You must keep documentary evidence of the need to use each product.</p> <p>For each supplementary nutrient you wish to use demonstrate:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>how you identify a need for supplementary nutrients, such as soil or tissue analysis and,</li> <li>that the nutrient and the application method and timing is appropriate to your soil type and crop needs</li> </ul> <p>You can record the details of how you are meeting the requirements of this <b>standard in your own Crop production plan or complete a 'Crop Management Plan template' which is available</b> on our <a href="#">website</a>. These will be reviewed by the Certification Team to check that standard requirements are met.</p> <p> Any changes to your plan should be submitted to the Certification Team for review.</p> <p>Fertiliser and soil conditioner input records.</p> <p>Lists of certified fertiliser products are available on our <a href="#">website</a>.</p>


### 2.5.2 Permitted fertilisers, soil conditioners and nutrients

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 3(1); Annex I*

Name of product	Description, compositional requirements and conditions for use	Soil Association additional conditions

<p>Farmyard manure (FYM)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Non-organic manure must not be from factory farming origin (defined below) or contain GM ingredients.</li> <li>• Liquid animal manure must undergo controlled fermentation and/or appropriate dilution before use.</li> </ul> <p><b>Guidance</b>  Preferably from Soil Association or other organically certified systems and preferably composted.</p> <p>You must retain information on the source, including the animal species and the husbandry system it comes from. We may request labels of feed fed to the animals producing the manure at inspection.</p> <p>If you use non-organic manure, the following sources meet this standard:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poultry manure and deep litter from the following egg producing systems: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ free range</li> <li>◦ deep litter systems which have a maximum stocking density of 7 birds/ m<sup>2</sup></li> <li>◦ deep litter rearing systems which have a maximum stocking density of 20kg/m<sup>2</sup></li> </ul> </li> <li>• Poultry manure and deep litter from free range, traditional free range and extensive indoor barn reared meat producing systems which have a maximum stocking density of 30kg/m<sup>2</sup></li> <li>• Manure from straw-based pig production systems, <b>not</b> including indoor tethered sow breeding units</li> <li>• Manure from cattle systems where cattle have access to pasture for at least part of the year.</li> </ul> <p>Animals from all these systems must be able to freely turn through 360° for the majority or all of their life-cycle and must <b>not</b> be kept permanently in the dark.</p> <p>A directory of Soil Association certified composts can be found <a href="#">here</a>.</p>	
<p>Name of product</p>	<p>Description, compositional requirements and conditions for use</p>	<p>Soil Association additional conditions</p>
<p>Composted or fermented mixture of household waste</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Product obtained from source separated household waste, which has been submitted to composting or to anaerobic fermentation for biogas production.</li> </ul>	



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Only vegetable and animal household waste</li> <li>• Only when produced in a closed and monitored collection system, accepted by the Member State</li> <li>• The concentrations of heavy metals in mg/kg of dry matter must not exceed: cadmium: 0.7; copper: 70; nickel: 25; lead: 45; zinc: 200; mercury: 0.4; chromium (total): 70; chromium (VI): not detectable.</li> </ul>	
Peat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use limited to horticulture (market gardening, floriculture, arboriculture, nursery stock)</li> </ul>	Only permitted as propagating media
Mushroom compost	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This must be initially made from products permitted in this table.</li> </ul>	
Dejecta of worms (vermicompost) and insects		
Composted or fermented mixture of vegetable matter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Composts obtained from mixtures of vegetable matter which has been submitted to composting or to anaerobic fermentation for biogas production.</li> </ul>	
Biogas digestate containing animal by-products co-digested with material of plant or animal origin as listed in this table	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• By-products of animal origin (including by-products from wild animals) of category 3 and digestive tract content of category 2 (categories 2 and 3 as defined in <a href="#">Regulation (EC) No 1069/2009</a> of the European Parliament and of the Council). Animal by-products must not be from factory farming origin. The processing must have been done in accordance with <a href="#">Commission Regulation (EC) No 142/2011</a>.</li> <li>• Not to be applied to edible parts of the crop.</li> </ul>	
	<p><b>Guidance</b></p> <p>Biogas digestate has high nitrogen availability, so is only suitable for situations where nitrogen loss can be controlled, e.g. application in spring when the crop is actively growing.</p>	
Products or by-products of animal origin as below: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blood meal</li> <li>• Hoof meal</li> <li>• Horn meal</li> <li>• Feather meal</li> <li>• Bone meal or degelatinised bone meal</li> <li>• Fish meal</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hydrolysed proteins must not be applied on edible parts of the crop.</li> <li>• For furs the maximum level of chromium (VI) must not be greater than: not detectable.</li> </ul>	
	<p><b>Guidance</b></p> <p> You should use products sourced from organic or extensive farming systems where possible.</p> <p>The Soil Association will continue to review the use of animal products with</p>	

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meat meal</li> <li>• <b>Hair and 'chiquette' meal</b></li> <li>• Wool</li> <li>• Fur</li> <li>• Hair</li> <li>• Dairy products</li> <li>• Hydrolysed proteins</li> </ul>	<p>the aim of permitting only animal products sourced from organic or extensive systems in the future. If you are aware of any research or developments in this area please contact a member of the Standards Team: <a href="mailto:standards@soilassociation.org">standards@soilassociation.org</a></p> <p>Non-animal based alternatives to these inputs, such as composts, farmyard manure or soft ground rock phosphate, may be suitable to treat your nutrient deficiency.</p> <p>Animal products typically have readily available nitrogen and are suitable only for situations where nitrogen loss can be controlled.</p>	
Name of product	Description, compositional requirements and conditions for use	Soil Association additional conditions
Products and by-products of plant origin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For example oilseed cake meal, cocoa husks, malt culms.</li> </ul>	
Hydrolysed proteins of plant origin		
Seaweeds and seaweed products	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For products which have been through the following processes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) physical processes including dehydration, freezing and grinding,</li> <li>(ii) extraction with water or aqueous acid and/or alkaline solution, or</li> <li>(iii) fermentation</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	You must not use calcified seaweed, lithothamne or maerl if extracted from the sea.
Sawdust and wood chips, composted bark and wood ash	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The wood must not have been chemically treated after felling.</li> </ul>	
Leonardite	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Raw organic sediment rich in humic acids.</li> <li>• Only if it is obtained as a by-product of mining activities.</li> </ul>	
Organic rich sediment from fresh water bodies formed under exclusion of oxygen (e.g. sapropel)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Only organic sediments that are by-products of fresh water body management or extracted from former freshwater areas.</li> <li>• When applicable, extraction methods should cause minimal impact on the aquatic system.</li> <li>• Only sediments derived from sources free from contaminations of pesticides, persistent organic pollutants and petrol-like substances.</li> <li>• The concentrations of heavy metals in mg/kg of dry matter must not exceed:</li> </ul>	

	cadmium: 0.7; copper: 70; nickel: 25; lead: 45; zinc: 200; mercury: 0.4; chromium (total): 70; chromium (VI): not detectable.	
Chitin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The polysaccharide obtained from the shell of crustaceans.</li> <li>Only if obtained from organic aquaculture or sustainable fisheries, as defined in Article 3e of <a href="#">Council Regulation (EC) No 2371/2002</a>.</li> </ul>	
Soft ground rock phosphate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Product as specified in point 7 of Annex I A.2 of <a href="#">Regulation (EC) No 2003/2003</a>.</li> <li>The cadmium content must be less than or equal to 90 mg/kg of P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub></li> </ul>	
Aluminium-calcium phosphate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Product as specified in point 6 of Annex I A.2. of <a href="#">Regulation (EC) No 2003/2003</a>.</li> <li>The cadmium content must be less than or equal to 90 mg/kg of P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>.</li> <li>Use only allowed where the soil pH is greater than 7.5.</li> </ul>	
Basic slag	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Products as specified in point 1 of Annex I A.2 of <a href="#">Regulation (EC) No 2003/2003</a>.</li> </ul>	
<b>Name of product</b>	<b>Description, compositional requirements and conditions for use</b>	<b>Soil Association additional conditions</b>
Crude potassium salt or kainit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Products as specified in point 1 of Annex I A.3 of <a href="#">Regulation (EC) No 2003/2003</a>.</li> </ul>	
Potassium sulphate, possibly containing magnesium salt	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Product obtained from crude potassium salt by a physical extraction process, possibly containing magnesium salts.</li> </ul>	
Stillage and stillage extract	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ammonium stillage excluded.</li> </ul>	
Calcium carbonate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only of natural origin, for example chalk, marl, ground limestone, Breton ameliorant, phosphate chalk.</li> </ul>	
Mollusc waste	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only from sustainable fisheries, as defined in Article 4 (1) (7) of <a href="#">Regulation (EU) No 1380/2013</a> or organic aquaculture</li> </ul>	
	<p><b>Guidance</b> You should also comply with Animal By-Product Regulations, for example in the <a href="#">UK</a>.</p>	
Egg shells	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Must not be of factory farming origin.</li> </ul>	
	<p><b>Guidance</b> You should also comply with Animal By-Product Regulations, for example in the <a href="#">UK</a>.</p>	
Magnesium and calcium carbonate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only of natural origin, for example magnesium chalk, ground magnesium limestone.</li> </ul>	
Magnesium sulphate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only of natural origin, for example kieserite.</li> </ul>	
Calcium chloride solution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Foliar treatment of apple trees, after identification of a calcium deficiency</li> </ul>	
Calcium sulphate (gypsum)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only of natural origin.</li> <li>Products as specified in point 1 of Annex I D of <a href="#">Regulation (EC) No 2003/2003</a>.</li> </ul>	

Industrial lime	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only as a by-product of sugar production from sugar beet or sugar cane, or vacuum salt production from brine found in mountains.</li> </ul>	
Elemental sulphur	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Products as specified in Annex I D.3 of <a href="#">Regulation (EC) No 2003/2003</a>.</li> </ul>	
Trace elements	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only the inorganic micronutrients listed in Annex I, part E of <a href="#">Regulation (EC) No 2003/2003</a>.</li> </ul>	
Sodium chloride		
Stone meal and clays	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For example ground basalt, bentonite, perlite and vermiculite.</li> </ul>	
Humic and fulvic acids	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only if obtained by inorganic salts/solutions excluding ammonium salts; or obtained from drinking water purification.</li> </ul>	
Xylite	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only if obtained as a by-product of mining activities (e.g. by-product of brown coal mining)</li> </ul>	
Biochar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A pyrolysis product made from a wide variety of organic materials of plant origin and applied as a soil conditioner.</li> <li>Only from plant materials, untreated or treated with products listed in standard 2.6.3.</li> <li>Maximum value of 4 mg polycyclic aromatic hydro-carbons (PAHs) per kg dry matter (DM).</li> </ul>	

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>2.5.3 The use of calcified seaweed is restricted</b>            You must not use calcified seaweed, lithothamne or maerl when extracted from the sea as a fertiliser, soil conditioner or nutrient.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Calcified seaweed that has been naturally washed onto the beach and collected by you to use on your farm is permitted.</p>

**Why?**

Calcified seaweed, lithothamne and maerl refer to a group of coralline algae, primarily of the species *Phymatolithon calcateum* and *Lithothamnion corallioides*. Calcified seaweed beds are relatively scarce and are important habitats which hold impressive levels of biodiversity, harbouring many rare and commercially valuable species. Owing to their extremely slow growth rate, calcified seaweed beds are very fragile and cannot sustain even limited extraction without deterioration.

Commercial extraction from the sea has already led to the destruction of several beds in Europe and current levels of protection provided are unlikely to prevent further destruction and deterioration. We therefore prohibit the use of calcified seaweed extracted from the sea under Soil Association standards.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>2.5.4 The use of peat is restricted</b>            You may only use peat in propagating media.</p>	<p>We are aiming to phase out the use of peat by 2025 at the latest. We will be reviewing this standard in 2019 with a view to further reducing peat use or</p>

*Soil Association higher standard*

phasing it out completely. To prepare for this, we encourage you to use sustainable alternatives to peat where possible.

We are conducting trials to test peat-free alternatives. If you would like to take part in the trials please contact a member of the Standards Team:



[standards@soilassociation.org](mailto:standards@soilassociation.org)

### Why?

Peat is a precious resource that can take thousands of years to form. Peatlands are important habitats for a wide range of species and play a key role in preventing floods and storing carbon. The extraction and burning of peat releases large amounts of carbon dioxide which contributes to global warming. We believe it is important to protect our peatlands and are supporting the development of reliable alternatives to peat for all propagation purposes. We continue to allow the use of peat for propagating while peat-free alternatives are being developed and trialled to prove their reliability for the commercial production of certain crops. We also prohibit the use of peat as bedding material for livestock production see standard 3.8.10.

### Standards

### Guidance

**2.5.5 The use of guano is prohibited**  
You must not use guano.  
*Soil Association higher standard*

### Why?

Guano harvesting can have very negative impacts on bat and bird colonies. Birds and bats are extremely sensitive to disturbance and guano harvesting practices have resulted in the loss of millions of bats, birds and their associated species.

### Standards

### Guidance

**2.5.6 Applying manure**  
The total amount of manure you can apply to your organic land, averaged over the whole area, must **not** be more than 170kg of nitrogen (N) per hectare per year.  
*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 3(2)*

You must detail the maximum rate of nitrogen from manure that is applied per hectare of your holding per year. In nitrogen vulnerable zones (NVZs) the field limit is 250kg of nitrogen per hectare per year.

To help calculate how much nitrogen is applied to your land you can use the table below:

Solid manure (per t or m <sup>3</sup> )	N(kg)
Cattle farm yard manure (FYM)	6.0
Sheep FYM	7.0
Pig FYM	7.0
Solid manure (per t or m <sup>3</sup> )	N(kg)
Poultry Layer FYM	19.0

	Broiler/turkey FYM	30.0
	Duck FYM	6.5
	Horse FYM	7
	Goat FYM	6
	<b>Slurry/liquid (per 1000l)</b>	<b>N(kg)</b>
	Cattle	2.6
	Pigs	3.6
	<b>Separated manures (per 1000l)</b>	<b>N(kg)</b>
	Separated cattle slurry, liquid fraction, strainer box	1.5
	Separated cattle slurry, liquid fraction, weeping-wall	2
	Separated cattle slurry, liquid fraction, mechanically separated	3
	Separated cattle slurry, solid Fraction	4
	Separated pig slurry, liquid fraction	3.6
	Separated pig slurry, solid fraction	5
	Composts containing manure must be included in your N calculation. Green waste composts are not included because they do not contain a significant amount of available nitrogen when the composting process is complete. We may check the analysis of your green waste compost to ensure this is the case.	
<b>Standards</b>	<b>Guidance</b>	
<p><b>2.5.7 Spreading surplus manure</b>  You may establish links with other organic holdings to spread surplus organic manure. This must be an on-going arrangement held in writing. The maximum nitrogen limit of 170kg of nitrogen per year per hectare must be calculated on the basis of all the organic production holdings involved in such cooperation.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 3(3)</i></p>	<p>You must document details of your arrangement.</p> <p>An example arrangement would be where you exchange manure for straw or feed.</p> <p>Organic manure can only be spread on organic land.</p>	

<p><b>2.5.8 Micro-organisms</b> To improve soil condition or nutrient availability you may use appropriate preparations of micro-organisms. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 3(4)</i></p>	<p>You must check that the product is authorised for use in your country for the intended purpose and it is not a GMO or derived from GMOs.</p>
<p><b>2.5.9 Compost activators</b> For compost activation you may use compost activators made from microbial and plant extracts. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 3(5)</i></p>	<p>Check that the product is authorised for use in your country for the intended purpose and it is not a GMO or derived from GMOs.</p>
<p><b>2.5.10 Biodynamic preparations</b> You may use biodynamic preparations. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 12(c)</i></p>	<p>Refer to the <a href="#">Demeter biodynamic standards</a> for information on biodynamic preparations. Any animal by-products used must meet these standards.</p>


## 2.6 Controlling pests and disease

### What is this chapter about?

Organic farming is a holistic agricultural production system that works with, rather than against, natural systems. Weeds are controlled, and pest and disease damage is reduced, using techniques which are sustainable and promote environmental preservation. It is fundamentally important that organic principles and practices are the primary tools in maintaining viable and healthy production systems. Any additional inputs should be viewed only as supplements, not substitutes, to the system and should only be called upon when absolutely necessary.

This chapter explains how organic farmers must prevent and control pests and disease, which plant protection products are permitted on organic crops and the conditions of use for these products.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>2.6.1 Pest, disease and weed management</b> The design and management of your organic system must rely primarily on organic preventative measures and practices to control and prevent damage caused by pests, diseases and weeds. This can include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Creating fertile soils with high biodiversity</li> <li>b) Choosing appropriate species and varieties resistant to pests and diseases</li> <li>c) Grafting onto resistant rootstock</li> <li>d) Appropriate crop rotations</li> </ul>	<p>Storage areas should be cleaned appropriately and if necessary, left empty for a suitable length of time before use, to act as a disease and insect break.</p>

<p>e) Protecting and encouraging natural enemies of pests. You may also introduce natural predators</p> <p>f) Mechanical and physical methods</p> <p>g) Carefully planning planting dates</p> <p>h) Pre-emergence and post-emergence mechanical weeding</p> <p>i) Thermal processes</p> <p>j) Using steam to sterilise buildings and equipment</p> <p>k) Using good husbandry and hygiene practices to limit the spread of any pests or disease.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 5(f); Art. 12(g)</i></p>	
<p><b>2.6.2 The use of pesticides and plant protection products is restricted</b></p> <p>1) You may <b>only</b> use the products listed in standard 2.6.3 below for pest, disease and weed control when there is an established threat to your crops, and when plants cannot be adequately protected by organic preventative measures and practices described in standard 2.6.1</p> <p>2) You must keep records which demonstrate why you need to use the product.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 12(1)(h)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 5(1)</i></p> <p>3) The products in the table below may only be used if they are authorised for your intended use in your country.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 16(1)</i></p>	<p>Plant production records need to specify why plant protection products need to be used.</p> <p> At inspection we will look for evidence to show that you have followed the conditions for treatment. This may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• records of crop monitoring</li> <li>• records of pest/disease levels</li> <li>• preventative practices in place</li> <li>• test results</li> <li>• records of products used, and</li> <li>• methods used to prevent damage to non-target species</li> </ul> <p>You can record the details of how you are meeting the requirements of this <b>standard in your own Crop production plan or complete a 'Crop Management Plan template' which is available on our <a href="#">website</a></b>. These will be reviewed by the Certification Team to check that standard requirements are met.</p> <p>Any changes to your plan should be submitted to the Certification Team for review.</p> <p>It is your responsibility to check the products from the table below are authorised for your intended use in your country. In the UK a list of legally approved products and their specific use(s) is published on the <a href="#">Chemicals Regulation Directorate</a>. You will need to ensure that legal Health and Safety requirements are adhered to when applying products.</p>



This applies to all parts of the organic or in-conversion holding including areas not used for crop production such as around buildings, paths, tracks and hedgerows.

### 2.6.3. Permitted pesticides and plant protection products

All substances listed in this table must comply at least with the conditions for use as specified in the Annex of Commission Implementing Regulation (EU) No 540/2011. More restrictive conditions for use for organic production are specified in the second column of the table.

(EC) 834/2007 Art. 16(1)(a)

(EC) 889/2008 Annex II

Name of product	Description, compositional requirements, conditions for use	Soil Association additional conditions
<b>Substances of plant or animal origin</b>		
Allium sativum (Garlic extract)		
Azadirachtin extracted from <i>Azadirachta indica</i> (Neem tree)		
Beeswax	Only as pruning agent/wound protectant	
COS-OGA		
Eugenol		Preferably of natural origin
Geraniol		Preferably of natural origin
Hydrolysed proteins excluding gelatine		
Laminarin	Kelp must be either grown organically according to standard 15.7.4 (Art. 6d) or harvested in a sustainable way according to standard 15.7.3 (Art. 6c) of the Soil Association seaweed standards.	
Maltodextrin		
Pheromones	Only in traps and dispensers	
Plant oils	All uses authorised, except herbicide.	
Pyrethrins	Only from plant origin	
Quassia extracted from <i>Quassia amara</i>	Only as an insecticide, repellent	
Repellents by smell of animal or plant origin/sheep fat	Only on non-edible parts of the crop and where crop material is not ingested by sheep or goats	
<i>Salix</i> spp. Cortex (aka willow bark extract)		

Thymol		Preferably of natural origin
<b>Basic substances</b>		
<b>Basic substances based on food</b>	<p>Only those basic substances within the meaning of Article 23(1) of <a href="#">Regulation (EC) No 1107/2009</a> that are covered by the definition of 'foodstuff' in Article 2 of <a href="#">Regulation (EC) No 178/2002</a> and have plant or animal origin.</p> <p>Substances not to be used as herbicides, but only for the control of pests and diseases.</p> <p>Basic substances are substances which are useful in plant protection, but are not predominantly used for this purpose. Many of them have traditionally been used in organic farming and include numerous foodstuffs of plant or animal origin.</p> <p>Substances that fall under this category are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lecithins</li> <li>• Sucrose</li> <li>• Fructose</li> <li>• Vinegar</li> <li>• Whey</li> <li>• Equisetum arvense L.</li> <li>• Chitosan hydrochloride (Obtained from sustainable fisheries or organic aquaculture)</li> </ul> <p><b>Contact the Certification Team for more information</b></p>	
<b>Micro-organisms or substances produced by or derived from micro-organisms</b>		
Micro-organisms	Not from GMO origin	
Spinosad		Not from GMO origin
Cerevisane		Not from GMO origin
<b>Other substances</b>		

Aluminium silicate (Kaolin)		
Calcium hydroxide	Fungicide, only in fruit trees, including nurseries, to control <i>Nectria galligena</i>	
Carbon dioxide		
Copper compounds in the form of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• copper hydroxide</li> <li>• copper oxychloride</li> <li>• copper oxide</li> <li>• Bordeaux mixture</li> <li>• tribasic copper sulphate</li> </ul>	<b>Guidance</b> In compliance with <a href="#">PPP legislation</a> you may use a maximum of 4kg/ha in any one year provided that over 7 years you do not exceed 28kg/ha.	
Diammonium phosphate	Only as attractant in traps	
Ethylene		
Fatty acids	All uses authorised, except herbicide	
Ferric phosphate (iron (III) orthophosphate)	Preparations to be surface-spread between cultivated plants.	
Hydrogen peroxide	For seed treatment of lettuce and ornamentals and for disinfection of agricultural cutting tools used in <i>Solanaceae</i> .	
Kieselgur (diatomaceous earth)		
Lime sulphur (calcium polysulphide)		
Paraffin oil		
Potassium and sodium hydrogen carbonate (aka potassium/sodium bicarbonate)		
Pyrethroids (only deltamethrin or lambda-cyhalothrin)	Only in traps with specific attractants; only against <i>Bactrocera oleae</i> and <i>Ceratitis capitata</i> Wied	
Quartz sand		
Sodium chloride	All uses authorised, except herbicide	
Sulphur		
<b>Standards</b>	<b>Guidance</b>	
<b>2.6.4. Using products in traps and dispensers</b> 1. For products used in traps and dispensers, except pheromone dispensers, the traps and/or dispensers must prevent the substances from being released into the environment and prevent contact between the substances and the crops being cultivated.		

2. The traps must be collected after use and disposed of safely.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 5(2)*

## 2.7 Seeds, plant propagation and potted plants

### What is this chapter about?

The aim of these standards is to ensure a broad range of varieties of high-quality organic seeds are available that will meet your production, environmental and market needs. At the same time it is important that you, the grower, have access to suitable seeds for organic production even when they are not yet available as organic.

### Standards

### Guidance

#### 2.7.1 Producing organic seed and propagating material

To produce organic seeds and propagating material you must grow the mother plant to organic standards for at least one generation, or for perennial plants, two growing seasons.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 12(1)(i)*

#### 2.7.2 Registering organic seed or seed potatoes

1. If you wish to sell organic seed or seed potatoes you can register your varieties that are available as organic on the seed database of organic seed availability. For registration, the supplier must:
  - a) Demonstrate that the supplier or the last operator, in cases where the supplier is only dealing with pre-packaged seed or seed potatoes, holds organic certification to produce organic seed or seed potatoes.
  - b) Demonstrate that the seed or seed potatoes to be placed on the market comply with the general requirements applicable to seed and seed potatoes.
  - c) Provide the following information:
    - i) the scientific name of the species and the variety denomination
    - ii) the name and contact details of the supplier or representative

In GB [OrganicXseeds](#) is the official database of organic seed availability.



Any variety which has not been registered in the database will be considered unavailable when certification bodies are making decisions on granting derogations to allow the use of non-organic seeds.

If the supplier does not provide all the information described in point 1 c) the manager of the database may, with the approval by the competent authority refuse the supplier's application for registration or delete a previously accepted registration.

A fee may be charged for each registration which will represent the cost of inserting and maintaining the information in the database. For more details please see the [OrganicXseeds](#) website.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>iii) the area where the supplier can deliver the seed or seed potatoes to the user and the usual time needed for the delivery</li> <li>iv) the country or region in which the variety is tested and approved for inclusion in the common catalogues of varieties of agricultural plant species and vegetable species as defined in Council Directives 2002/53/EC on the common catalogue of varieties of agricultural plant species (<a href="#">26</a>) and 2002/55/EC on the marketing of vegetable seed (<a href="#">27</a>)</li> <li>v) the date from which the seed or seed potatoes will be available</li> <li>vi) the name and/or code number of the control authority or control body certifying the organic activity.</li> </ul> <p>d) This information must be kept up to date and the supplier must immediately inform the manager of the database if any of registered varieties are no longer available.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 50; Art. 51</i></p>	
<p><b>2.7.3 Seed and plant propagating material</b></p> <p>When using seed and plant propagating material you must, in order of preference:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) use organic seeds and plant propagating material when a suitable variety is available</li> <li>b) use in-conversion seeds and plant propagating material when a suitable variety is available</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 12(1)(i); Art. 22(2)(b)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 45(1)(a)</i></p>	<p> You can find details of available organic seeds and seed potatoes at <a href="http://www.organicxseeds.co.uk">www.organicxseeds.co.uk</a>.</p>
<p><b>2.7.4 Using non-organic seed and vegetative propagating material</b></p> <p>When there are no organic or in-conversion seeds or vegetative propagating material of a suitable variety available you may use non-organic. Your certification body has to approve all permissions to use non-organic untreated seeds or</p>	<p>You can find details of available organic seeds and seed potatoes at <a href="http://www.organicxseeds.co.uk">www.organicxseeds.co.uk</a>. You can submit derogation requests online or you can ask us for a seed derogation form. You will need to get permission before you use any non-organic seed or seed potatoes. Any derogation will only be valid for one growing season.</p>

<p>vegetative propagating material. The conditions under which your certification body will grant permission for non-organic seed and seed potatoes are set out in standard 2.7.5.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 22(2)(b)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 45(1)(b)</i></p>	
<p><b>2.7.5 Conditions under which non-organic seed may be authorised</b></p> <p>The conditions under which the authorisation to use <b>non-organic seed</b> or <b>seed potatoes</b> may be granted are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) where no variety of the species which the user wants to obtain is registered on the <a href="http://www.organicxseeds.co.uk/database">www.organicxseeds.co.uk database</a></li> <li>b) where no supplier, meaning an operator who markets seed or seed potatoes to other operators, is able to deliver the seed or seed potatoes before sowing or planting in situations where you have ordered the seed or seed potatoes in reasonable time</li> <li>c) where the variety which you wish to obtain is not registered on the <a href="http://www.organicxseeds.co.uk/database">www.organicxseeds.co.uk database</a>, and you can demonstrate that none of the registered alternatives of the same species are appropriate and that the authorisation therefore is significant for your production</li> <li>d) where it is justified for use in research, tests in small-scale field trials, or for variety conservation purposes agreed by the competent authority. The authorisation must be granted before the sowing of the crop and the derogation will only be valid for one growing season. The competent authority may grant general authorisation for all producers where conditions in point (a) and(c) are fulfilled.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 45(5-9)</i></p>	
<p><b>2.7.6 Organically available species</b></p> <p>1. When species for which we know organic seed or seed potatoes are available in sufficient number of varieties and</p>	<p>Currently there are no species listed in Annex X.</p>

<p>quantities in all parts of the Community, they will be listed in the guidance to this standard.</p> <p>2. Species listed cannot be grown from non-organic seed or seed potatoes unless it is justified and agreed by your certification body for use in research, to test in small scale field trials or for variety conservation purposes.</p> <p><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 45(3); Annex X</i></p>	
<p><b>2.7.7. Chemically treated seed</b>  Non-organic seed and seed potatoes must <b>not</b> be treated with plant protection products that are not listed in standard 2.6.3, unless your competent authority requires it for plant health (phytosanitary) reasons.</p> <p><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 45(2), Art. 5(1)</i></p>	<p>In GB the competent authority is Defra.</p>
<p><b>2.7.8 Buying transplants</b>  If you use transplants (bare root, blocks, modules, trees, soft fruit bushes) they must have been grown to organic standards by a certified organic producer.</p> <p><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 1(a)</i></p>	<p>Transplants are plants which are intended to be grown on in an organic production system within the soil before being harvested and sold as organic. Therefore, transplants are not plant propagating material, but represent a stage of plant production and so must be grown to organic standards.</p>
<p><b>2.7.9 Growing transplants</b>  To produce transplants for use in organic growing, you may <b>only</b> use substrates made from materials in standard 2.5.2. Manure and plant material must be organic where available and preferably composted.</p> <p><i>(EC) 834.2007 Art. 12(1)(b)</i>  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 3(1)</i></p>	
<p><b>2.7.10 Soil-based production</b></p> <p>1. Plants must be grown in soil in connection with the subsoil and bedrock.</p> <p>2. The following are excluded from this requirement:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>plant propagation</li> <li>aquatic plant production</li> <li>plants in pots or containers (including salad cress) sold direct to consumers still in their pots, which are not</li> </ol>	<p> Records of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>substrates used and additional nutrients and other inputs applied</li> <li>seeds or vegetative propagating material used</li> <li>sales</li> </ul> <p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>

<p>intended to be grown on or harvested before they are sold</p> <p>d) sprouted seeds as long as they are produced only with the addition of water.</p> <p>3. Plants in pots or containers falling under category 2c may be called organic if:</p> <p>a) the substrate is made of at least 51% (by fresh weight of the end product) of materials from organic farming origin</p> <p>b) no more than 49% of the substrate is made up of non-organic manure and compost which meets standard 2.5.2</p> <p>c) the substrate provides more than 50% of their nutrient needs, until the point of sale</p> <p>d) you make sure the substrate is biologically active</p> <p>e) you meet all other relevant standards</p> <p>f) the entire plant and the pot are sold together</p> <p>g) you do not use peat or slaughterhouse wastes, and</p> <p>h) you do not use soil from organic farms.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Point 3 applies to both edibles and ornamentals.</p> <p>Note that hydroponic production is prohibited (Standard 2.4.2).</p>
--	--

Why?

Production in the soil is a fundamental principle of organic production, so where crops are grown, harvested and sold as organic they must be grown in the soil. In some instances a stage of production of an organic plant has to be out of the soil, but this should be limited only to plant propagation. However, where potted plants are sold direct to final consumers as organic they may not be planted into the soil to grow on further. In these cases, each potted plant should meet requirements to ensure organic integrity up to this point. In the absence of organic regulation, we have produced this set of standards for the production of organic potted plants, with agreed guidance from the competent authority.



## 2.8 Standards for mushroom production

### What is this chapter about?

This section has specific standards for cultivating mushrooms. You must also comply with the applicable standards in Chapter 1 'General standards for farming and growing' and Chapter 2 'Standards for organic land and crops'.

### Standards

### Guidance

#### 2.8.1 Substrates for mushroom production

1. You may **only** use the following substrates for mushroom production:
  - a) manure from organic production
  - b) other products of agricultural origin produced according to organic production methods
  - c) peat which has not been chemically treated
  - d) wood which has not been chemically treated after felling
  - e) mineral products permitted in standard 2.5.2.
  - f) water and soil.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 6*

You may use in-conversion products produced to organic standards.



We are aiming to phase out the use of peat by 2025 at the latest. We will be reviewing this standard in 2019 with a view to further reducing peat use or phasing it out completely. To prepare for this, we encourage you to use sustainable alternatives to peat where possible.

We are conducting trials to test peat-free alternatives. If you would like to take part in the trials please contact a member of the Standards Team: [standards@soilassociation.org](mailto:standards@soilassociation.org)

#### 2.8.2 Using non-organic manure

1. You may only use non-organic manure in the substrate if:
  - a) manure from an organic farm is not available, and
  - b) non-organic manure does not exceed 25% of the substrate.
2. The percentage must be calculated as the fresh weight, before composting, of all components except the casing and any added water.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 6(a)(ii)*

You must be able to demonstrate that organic manure is not available. For example by:

- providing correspondence with local organic producers who may be able to supply you with manure
- evidence of advertising for organic manure.

We recognise that the principle of returning organic manures to organic land often means that organic manures are not readily available.

## 2.9 Additional standards for watercress production

### What's this chapter about?

The GB Organic Regulation does not contain detailed rules for organic watercress production. In their absence, the following standards have been adapted by applying *mutatis mutandis* to provide a certification framework for organic watercress production. You must also comply with the applicable standards in Chapter 1 'General standards for farming and growing' and Chapter 2 'Standards for organic land and crops'.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>2.9.1 Conversion</b>            You must convert your whole watercress production unit at the same time with a minimum conversion period of two crop cycles.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 11; Art. 17(1)(c)</i>  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 36</i></p>	<p>A crop cycle includes planting and clearing the beds.</p> <p>New land may enter conversion from the date that the we receive your application (or a specified date thereafter).</p>
<p><b>2.9.2 Water source and quality</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Water must be of drinking quality.</li> <li>2. You must use water from natural springs or artesian wells which cannot be polluted by surface water or any other source of pollution.</li> <li>3. You may use pumped borehole water:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) in the summer when the river flow is too low, or</li> <li>b) to redirect water from natural springs elsewhere on the holding.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 63(1)(c)</i>  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 3(a)(iii)</i></p>	<p>In the UK, potable water must meet the standards laid down in <a href="#">The Water Supply (Water Quality) Regulations 2016</a>.</p>
<p><b>2.9.3 Bed management</b>            You must reuse the gravel and crop residues that are removed when you clean the beds and, where possible:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) separate and re-use the gravel on the beds</li> <li>b) compost the crop residues and solid material from the settling tanks and spread onto organic land.</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 5(c)</i></p>	<p>If you are unable to re-use the gravel, you must give the reason and detail what is done with this material.</p> <p>You may spread the compost and solid material from the settling tanks onto local non-organic land if you do not have access to suitable organic land.</p>
<p><b>2.9.4 Feeding your plants</b>            Your growing crop must derive the majority of each nutrient from the natural water. Where the nutritional needs of your crops cannot be met, you may make up the balance from</p>	<p>If you wish to use inputs, describe in this section how you identified a need for inputs and how you prevent over-fertilisation.</p> <p>You must measure levels of phosphate and other added nutrients in the water regularly.</p>

<p>nutrient sources using the inputs allowed in section 2.5. The dosing of fertilisers must match, as closely as possible, the crop demands.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC)834/2007 Art .5(a)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 3(1)</i></p>	<p>Note - we expect you to measure levels weekly, but with our agreement, and provided the tests reveal no problems, you may do it less frequently.</p>
<p><b>2.9.5 Water quality</b></p> <p>Your watercress operation must not adversely affect the water quality in the receiving watercourse.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 3(a)</i></p>	<p>To demonstrate this you may need to measure and record water quality. This would include details on what you are testing for and the frequency of testing. We would expect you to test for levels of nutrients, phosphate and suspended solid concentrations in your discharge water. This must demonstrate that your watercress operation is not adversely affecting the water quality in the receiving watercourse. Where nutrient levels in incoming groundwater are already high, this may be demonstrated through an inlet/outlet differential.</p> <p>Target parameters for specific river systems in the GB are set by the Environment Agency.</p>

## 2.10 Standards for wild harvesting

### What's this chapter about?

These standards cover the harvesting of plants, plant products and fungi from the wild (but not animals). Some people also call this 'wild crafting'. These standards cover a wide range of products and geographical areas. The aim of our standards is to make sure that when you harvest wild products:

- the yields you take are sustainable for the long term preservation of the target species
- you protect the biodiversity of the area, and
- you prevent contamination.

You must also comply with the applicable standards in Chapter 1 'General standards for farming and growing' and Chapter 2 'Standards for organic land and crops'.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>2.10.1 Scope</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The following standards apply to the collection of wild plants, plant resources and fungi, growing naturally in natural areas, forests and agricultural areas</li> <li>2. These standards do not apply to products from hunting and fishing wild animals.</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 1(2) Art. 12</i></p>	
<p><b>2.10.2 Wild harvest plan</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Before starting your organic enterprise you must write a plan detailing how you will comply with these organic standards. The plan must be updated when you make any significant changes to your activity.</li> <li>2. The plan must include a full description of your premises, units and activities. Including;             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) storage and production premises, collection areas and, where applicable, processing and/or packaging premises</li> <li>b) the date of the last input on the collection area of any agrochemicals, artificial fertilisers and other materials which are not permitted in these organic standards.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>	<p>You will need to provide:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A map of the collection area which shows the target populations as well as other sensitive species and habitats</li> <li>• A description of the species, Latin and local names, and collected parts/resources</li> <li>• A management plan for sustainable wild harvest. For more information on requirements refer to standard 2.10.4 and 2.10.5.</li> <li>• A management plan for assessment and regular monitoring of the target resources and habitats</li> <li>• The planned harvesting quantities</li> <li>• <b>Collectors' registers in order to make sure that all</b> collectors are well trained and know the rules of collection</li> <li>• How you ensure collectors are trained, knowledgeable and competent in the following aspects:</li> </ul>

<p>3. Where third parties are involved in the management or control of the wild harvest collection area, you must provide guarantees from them which ensure that standards 2.10.3, 2.10.4 and 2.10.5 are complied with. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 63(1)(a); Art. 70</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. Plant to be collected (including which parts, harvesting area, minimum quality requirements etc.)</li> <li>ii. Sustainable collection methods</li> <li>iii. Post-harvest handling of collected material</li> <li>iv. Any annual written authorisation from local and national regulatory bodies or other authorities where available.</li> </ul> <p>Your collection instructions must be regularly reviewed and revised if necessary based on site and species-specific monitoring of collection impacts. If you make any significant changes in your operation, inform the Certification Team. Significant changes are, for example, change of location of an activity, change of ownership, change of contact person or alteration of certified production.</p>
<p><b>2.10.3 Wild harvest land treated with prohibited products</b> The area which you use for wild harvesting must not have been treated with products which are not permitted in these organic standards during the last three years before harvest. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 12(2)(a)</i></p>	<p>You must be able to demonstrate what effective measures are taken to ensure that any collection areas are not affected by contamination with prohibited products.</p> <p>On a map of the collection area identify any areas or potential sources of contamination (towns, industry, landfills, intensive agriculture areas, etc.)</p>
<p><b>2.10.4 Maintaining wild plant resources</b> The wild harvesting of plant resources must maintain the species in the collection area. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 12(2)(b)</i></p>	<p>You must hold information on:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The global and/or national/regional conservation status of the target species.</li> <li>2. The collection methods and management practices including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. How target species are adequately identified e.g. voucher (reference) specimens provided from the collection site</li> <li>b. A map of collection areas and location of target populations (preferably a 1:50,000 scale map or less)</li> <li>c. Species-specific harvest methods, including collected parts, collection method and collection period</li> <li>d. Minimum biological age/size class allowed for collection for each target species and collection site</li> <li>e. Maximum allowed collection limits (quantities, frequency, periods)</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. How you ensure that the rate (intensity and frequency) of target resource <b>collection does not exceed the target species' ability to regenerate</b> over the long term. To include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Baseline information/inventory on target species in the collection area, including population size, distribution, population structure (size/age classes), rate of reproduction/growth/regeneration.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>

	<p>How you use species-specific baseline information, resource assessment and/or monitoring data on collection impacts to inform your maximum collection quantities, frequencies and periods.</p> <p>Compliance to Principle 1 of the <a href="#">FairWild Standard</a> demonstrates that you are meeting the requirements of this standard.</p>
<p><b>2.10.5 Preventing negative environmental impacts</b>  The collection activities must not negatively impact the habitat and other wild species in the collection area.  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 12(2)(b)</i></p>	<p>You must hold information about:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Any rare, threatened or endangered species and habitats that are likely to be affected by collection of the target resource and how they are protected.</li> <li>2. How the management activities supporting wild harvest of target species do not adversely affect ecosystem diversity, processes and functions. For example, evidence from monitoring that such practices do not negatively affect sensitive species or the ecosystem structure, diversity and functions in the collection area.</li> </ol> <p>Management practices to minimise competition with or promote growth of the target species are used, including how these practices do not adversely affect sensitive species, ecosystem structure, diversity and function in the collection area. For example, evidence from monitoring.</p> <p>Compliance to Principle 2 of the <a href="#">FairWild Standard</a> demonstrates that you are meeting the requirements of this standard.</p>

## 2.11 Additional standards for woodland

### What is this chapter about?

The GB Organic Regulation does not contain detailed rules for the management of organic woodlands. In their absence, the following standards have been adapted from *EU Organic Regulation 834/2007* and *(EC) 889/2008* by applying *mutatis mutandis* and supplemented with expert opinion on best practice (as per FSC and UKWAS guidelines) to provide a certification framework for organic woodland production.

You must also comply with the applicable standards in:

- Chapter 1 'General standards for farming and growing'
- **Chapter 2** 'Standards for organic land and crops'

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>2.11.1 Scope</b></p> <p>1. These organic woodland standards cover what you must do for your farm woodland and trees, forestry, agroforestry and non-timber forest products to be certified as organic.</p> <p>2. The standards apply to the production and harvesting of all wood and non-wood products from any woodland type, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• boreal, temperate and tropical forests</li> <li>• plantations</li> <li>• natural and semi-natural forests</li> <li>• non-intervention forest</li> <li>• other systems in which a forest structure is expected to develop</li> <li>• farm woodland and farmland trees, and</li> <li>• agroforestry.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Examples of products for which you can apply for certification using these and other sections of our standards that we specify, include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• sawn wood</li> <li>• charcoal</li> <li>• firewood</li> <li>• coppice products, and</li> <li>• woodland fungi and fruits.</li> </ul>
<p><b>2.11.2 FSC certification</b></p> <p>For your timber and wood products to be eligible for organic status, you must comply with:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• these organic woodland standards, and</li> <li>• your FSC endorsed national standard (<a href="#">UKWAS</a> in the UK).</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>We regard FSC principles and criteria as the global benchmark of responsible forest management.</p> <p>The principal requirements of FSC/UKWAS are:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>to have a detailed five year management plan and an outline 20 year management plan</li> <li>to have maps of the woodland or forest area including, for example, biodiversity features, public access and felling areas, and</li> </ol>

	<p>iii. to consult with relevant interested parties about your forest or woodland management.</p> <p>Please ask us if you would like a copy of the FSC or UKWAS standards.</p>
<p><b>2.11.3 Organic woodland certification</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. When you apply for organic woodland certification, you must manage all the forest, trees and woodland on your farm to these standards.</li> <li>2. For your timber to be eligible for organic status, it must come from a functional forest or woodland unit.</li> <li>3. The forest or woodland unit can consist of several separated areas, but you must: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- manage them all under one management plan</li> <li>- convert all of them to organic woodland management at the same time.</li> </ul> </li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Under some circumstances you may add additional separate woodland areas to your farm woodland certification. Speak to the Certification Team for more details.</p>
<p><b>2.11.4 Controlling weeds, pests and disease</b></p> <p>To control weeds, pests and disease, you may use the methods and substances outlined in section 2.6 Controlling pests and disease.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>2.11.5 The use of fertilisers is restricted</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. You must design new plantings to avoid the need to use fertilisers.</li> <li>2. You must not: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• use fertilisers to enhance the growth of healthy trees</li> <li>• use any fertilisers we do not allow in section 2.5, or</li> <li>• chemically treat mineral fertilisers to make them more soluble.</li> </ul> </li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>We will ask you for evidence that you have designed new plantings to avoid using fertilisers.</p>
<p><b>2.11.6 Permitted fertilisers and soil conditioners</b></p> <p>If you bring in materials to increase soil fertility, you may only use:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• livestock manure, compost and plant waste as outlined in sections 2.4 and 2.5, and</li> </ul>	



<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• mineral fertilisers and supplementary nutrients as detailed in section 2.5. You may only use these as a supplement to using compost, manure and plant waste.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>2.11.7 Mycorrhizal preparations</b></p> <p>You may use appropriate mycorrhizal preparations to enhance fertility in the woodland.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>2.11.8 Managing fire</b></p> <p>If you intend to use fire as a management tool, you must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tell us you are going to use it and in what way</li> <li>• take into account traditional knowledge on how and when to use fire, and</li> <li>• assess the environmental impact of using fire, for example, the effect of smoke on lichen from charcoal burning.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>You will need to include in your management plan details of how you will use fire and your assessment of its environmental impact.</p>
<p><b>2.11.9 Traditional coppice</b></p> <p>1. You may manage coppice areas on a minimum intervention basis. This may include, for example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• singled to high forest techniques, or</li> <li>• traditional coppice rotations.</li> </ul> <p>2. If you are managing your coppice area on a traditional coppice rotation, you must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• maintain the long term productive potential of coppice areas through on going planting and natural regeneration and appropriate techniques such as layering</li> <li>• protect coppice stools from grazing by wild animals or livestock, and</li> <li>• time your coppicing to minimise the impact of your operations on the surrounding environment.</li> </ul>	

<p>3. In addition to the FSC/UKWAS requirements, you must detail in your five year management plan:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• how you will preserve or enhance the long term productive potential of the coppice areas</li> <li>• the proposed coppice cycle, and</li> <li>• if relevant, the species, density and management of standards within the coppice areas.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>2.11.10 Short rotation coppice</b>  You may have short rotation coppice systems, provided you can comply with these woodland standards.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>2.11.11 Non-timber forest products</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If you produce and sell timber and non-timber forest products you must comply with these standards and those in section 2.10 Wild harvesting or 3.17 Beekeeping.</li> <li>2. You do not need to comply with these standards if you: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• only harvest and sell non-timber forest products (including bee products), and not timber products, or</li> <li>• do not have management responsibility for the woodland or trees.</li> </ul> </li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>2.11.12 Agricultural production in woodland</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If you use woodland or forest areas for organic agriculture (for example for pigs or poultry) <b>as well as</b> woodland products, you must manage these areas to these organic woodland standards.</li> <li>2. Where you allow livestock access to woodland or forest areas, but you are not selling any woodland products as organic, you do not need to meet these organic woodland standards.</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>In order to meet standard 2.3.1 you will need to describe the measures you will implement to ensure these areas and habitats are protected and/or enhanced.</p>

## 3.0 Standards for organic livestock production

### 3.1 Converting your animals to organic

#### What is this chapter about?

This section covers the conversion periods for different livestock species and livestock products. It also includes standards for reduced conversion periods for land used for pig and poultry production and additional rules for the conversion of land used to feed organic livestock.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.1.1 Producing organic livestock</b></p> <p>1. Organic animals must be born and raised on an organic holding and managed to full organic standards throughout their lives. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 5(i); Art. 14(1)(a)(i)</i></p> <p>2. Additionally:</p> <p>a) For sheep, goats and pigs intended for meat production, their dams must be managed to full organic standards from mating.</p> <p>b) For cattle intended for organic meat production, their dams must be managed to full organic standards for at least 12 weeks before calving. <i>Soil Association higher standard (EC) 889/2008 Art. 38(1)(a)(b)</i></p> <p>3. Non-organic poultry intended for meat production can convert to organic subject to meeting the requirements of standard 3.1.2. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 38(1)(c)</i></p>	<p>Non-organic animals brought on to your holding under the conditions of standard 3.2.2 can only be classed as converted breeding stock. See standard 3.1.2 below referring to sale of organic products from these animals.</p> <p>Converted breeding stock cannot be sold as organic, but you may sell them as converted breeding stock.</p> <p>We will collect information on the status of your stock (organic, converted breeding stock and non-organic) during your inspection.</p> <p>You may mate animals on in-conversion land.</p>

#### Why?

Our aim is for animals to be organic for their whole life. We do not allow animals that start their lives on non-organic farms to be sold as organic, even when they are kept to organic standards for set amounts of time. The exception is poultry as there are not currently enough organically bred chicks available to supply the organic sector.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.1.2 Producing organic livestock products</b></p> <p>Where non-organic animals have been brought onto the holding in accordance with the standards in section 3.2 and if their livestock products are to be sold as organic, the animals</p>	<p>To meet standard 3.2.6 you must have authorisation from your competent authority before bringing in non-organic birds. Refer to the standard below on minimum ages when poultry can be slaughtered.</p>

<p>must be kept to full organic standards for at least the periods set out below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) 6 months in the case of pigs</li> <li>b) 6 months in the case of sheep, cows and goats for milk production</li> <li>c) 6 weeks in the case of poultry for egg production</li> <li>d) 10 weeks for poultry of slow-growing strains for meat production, brought in before they are 3 days old</li> <li>e) for fast growing strains of poultry for meat production, refer to standard 3.12.22 for minimum slaughter ages.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 38(1)</i></p>	<p>In GB, the competent authority <b>classifies “slow growing strains”</b> of poultry under organic management as strains wherein the live weight gain per day does not exceed 45g (or in the case of turkeys, 55g per day), averaged over the life of the bird. This may soon be supplemented by a list of particular strains classified as slow growing.</p> <p>If this daily live weight gain is exceeded, the poultry would be classified as a fast growing strain.</p>
<p><b>3.1.3 Producing organic fleece</b></p> <p>You may only sell the fleece of your sheep and goats as Soil Association organic if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) your sheep and goats have been kept to full organic standards since birth or for at least 12 months before shearing</li> <li>b) you allowed a period of three months (or two times the legal withdrawal period, whichever is greatest) between the last treatment of the animals with an external veterinary treatment and shearing</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Wool is not currently covered under the GB organic regulation and therefore will not appear on your certification documents as certified to the GB organic regulation (889/2008).</p> <p>The British Wool Marketing Board will accept organic wool from sellers that have organic sheep listed on their licence. They will not require you to show organic wool as a separate enterprise.</p> <p>If you would like to certify and sell your wool to Soil Association standards we can issue you with a separate licence that does not reference the EU regulation.</p> <p>Organic wool certifiers may require further conditions, such as pesticide residue limits. For more information see the <a href="#">Global Organic Textile Standard (GOTS)</a>.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Why?</b></p> <p>This standard ensures that the entire fleece has been grown whilst the sheep are under organic management and reduces the risk that residues are left in the wool from any veterinary treatments.</p>	

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.1.4 Simultaneous conversion</b></p> <p>1. Where non-organic animals exist on your holding when you begin to convert your land, you may convert all your livestock, pasturage and/or any land used for animal feed at the same time. The total combined conversion period, for livestock, pasturage and/or any land used for animal feed, before you can sell the animals or their products as organic, is 24 months. The animals must be mainly fed with products from this land.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(a)(iii)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 38(2)</i></p>	<p><b>We interpret 'mainly' as meaning 51% or more.</b></p> <p>Animals that meet the requirements of simultaneous conversion may be brought on to or sold off your unit, but such livestock and any products from them may not be sold as organic until both buying and selling units have completed their <b>conversion periods</b>. <b>Ask us to detail the stock on your trading schedule as 'stock reared under simultaneous conversion' before you trade or sell them (normally after your second inspection).</b></p> <p>If you have any other non-organic stock on the converting unit you must agree with us, through your conversion plan, when you will remove them.</p>
<p>2. For Soil Association organic, simultaneous conversion only applies to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) calves, intended for meat production, born at least 12 weeks after the start of conversion</li> <li>b) other offspring conceived after the start of the conversion</li> <li>c) products of existing breeding stock, for example milk.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>Why?</b></p> <p>Our aim is for animals to be organic for their whole life. We do not allow animals that start their lives on non-organic farms to be sold as organic, even when they are kept to organic standards for set amounts of time. The exception is poultry as there are not currently enough organically bred chicks available to supply the organic sector.</p>	
<p><b>3.1.5 Selling in-conversion animals or animal products</b></p> <p>During the conversion periods you must not sell any of your livestock or livestock products as organic or <b>'in-conversion'</b>.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 17(1)(f); Art. 26(b)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.1.6 Conversion of land used to feed livestock</b></p> <p>You must make sure that by the time your livestock operation reaches organic status, any land on your unit used for their grazing or feed is either organic or in-conversion.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 37(1)</i></p>	

**3.1.7 Conversion period for land used for pig and poultry production**  
 Notwithstanding the provisions in standard 3.1.6. Soil Association Certification may allow you to use land in its second year of conversion for organic pig or poultry production. This may be reduced further to allow the use of land after six months of conversion, if the land has not received anything which is prohibited in these organic standards for at least 12 months.  
*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 37(2)*

If you wish to make use of the provision to reduce the conversion period to 6 months, you will need to demonstrate that no prohibited inputs have been used on the land for the last 12 months. For example, through input records, or by being part of a recognised environmental scheme which prohibits the use of these inputs. Physical evidence and records will be used to confirm compliance at inspection.

**R** Input records may be required

**3.2 Sourcing livestock**

**What is this chapter about?**

This chapter covers the standards on sourcing and bringing in livestock onto your holding. Organic farming aims to complete the production cycles of livestock species with organically reared animals. The objective is to increase the availability and the gene pool of organic animals and improve the self-reliance of the organic farming sector. The choice of breeds used should take account of their capacity to adapt to local conditions, their vitality and their resistance to disease.

**Standards**

**3.2.1 Breed and livestock selection**  
 1. When choosing the breed and strain of your livestock you must give preference to indigenous breeds and strains.  
 2. You must choose breeds or strains that:  
 a) are suitable to local conditions  
 b) avoid the need for the mutilation of animals  
 c) have vitality and resistance to disease, including specific health problems or diseases associated with some breeds or strains used in intensive production, such as:  
 i) porcine stress syndrome  
 ii) PSE Syndrome (pale-soft-exudative)  
 iii) sudden death  
 iv) spontaneous abortion, and  
 v) difficult births requiring caesarean operations  
*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 5(g)(j); Art. 14(1)(c)(iv)*

**Guidance**

Welfare issues, mortality and disease levels for all animal species can indicate that the breeds and strains chosen for your system are not suitable. The inspector will use your mortality and disease records and welfare outcome to inform a decision on compliance to this standard.  
 Some breeds and strains of chicken are not suitable for organic systems because research has shown them to be predisposed to welfare problems.  
 The breed you use must either:  
 • **meet Defra’s definition of slow-growing** (no more than 45g per day), or  
 • **be on the RSPCA’s list** of welfare-approved free-range broiler breeds.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 8(1)*

### 3.2.2 Bringing in livestock

1. If you need to bring in livestock you must source, in order of preference:
  - a) from other organic herds or flocks
  - b) converted breeding stock
  - c) non-organic breeding stock
2. **Only** when organic animals are not available in sufficient number and subject to the conditions of the standards in this section, may you bring non-organic animals onto your holding for breeding purposes.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(a)(i)(ii)*  
*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 9(1)*

A wide range of organic and converted breeding stock is normally available. There are several sources where you can look for organic stock:

- [The Organic Marketplace](#) Similar platforms on other certification bodies' websites
- Organic marketing groups
- Organic sales at livestock markets and private sales
- Online auctions

Organic Poultry suppliers in the UK are listed [here](#).

If you are planning on bringing in non-organic animals you will need to demonstrate to us that organic animals are not available before purchase. You will need to contact the Certification Team with details.

If you bring in non-organic animals see section 3.1 on conversion requirements.

If you need more information please contact the Certification Team.

### 3.2.3 Establishing a herd or flock

When you are establishing a herd or flock for the first time you may:

- a) on a converting holding, convert existing animals on the holding;
- b) on organic land you may bring in non-organic animals, **only** if organic are not available in sufficient numbers. They must be reared organically from weaning and must comply with the following conditions:
  - (i) calves must be less than six months old
  - (ii) lambs and kids must be less than 60 days old
  - (iii) piglets must weigh less than 35kg.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 9(2)*

Where you are establishing a new livestock enterprise on an in-conversion holding you may bring in non-organic animals, these must be converted once the land becomes organic.

Please refer to standards 3.1.1 and 3.1.2 for the livestock conversion requirements


### 3.2.4 Replacement breeding stock

1. To renew a herd or flock you may bring in non-organic

The percentage must be calculated from the number of adult animals present on the holding prior to bringing in your replacements. The allowance is calculated

<p>male and female breeding stock <b>only</b> if organic is not available in sufficient numbers.</p> <p>2. The number of non-organic female breeding stock you bring on must comply with the following conditions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>only up to 10% of your existing number of adults in your herd, per year for equine or cows, including buffalo and bison species</li> <li>only up to 20% of your existing number of adults in your herd or flock, per year for pigs, sheep and goats</li> <li>only one animal if you have less than five sheep, pigs or goats or less than ten cattle or equine animals</li> <li>females must not have previously given birth, in other words, they are before their first calving, lambing or farrowing.</li> </ol> <p>3. Breeding stock brought onto your holding must be kept according to these organic standards.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 9(3)</i></p>	<p>as the number of replacements brought in within a 12 month period.</p>
<p><b>3.2.5 Additional allowances for bringing in non-organic stock</b></p> <p>1. With prior authorisation from your competent authority you may increase the percentage of non-organic breeding stock you bring in up to 40% of your existing adults in the following special cases:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>if you are significantly increasing the size of your herd or flock</li> <li>if you are changing breed</li> <li>if you are developing a new livestock enterprise, or</li> <li>it is a rare breed.</li> </ol> <p>2. These animals must not have previously given birth, unless they are a rare breed.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 9(4)</i></p>	<p>In GB, permission is granted by the competent authority, Defra, and we will submit an application on your behalf. Permission will only be granted if you show us that appropriate organic or converted stock is not available.</p> <p>We will need the following details from you to submit to the competent authority:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• why you cannot source organic animals</li> <li>• which organic suppliers you have contacted</li> <li>• the number of animals you need</li> <li>• the number of non-organic animals you plan to bring in and when</li> <li>• the name of your suppliers</li> <li>• whether any suppliers will be able to supply you with organic animals in future.</li> </ul> <p>A wide range of organic and converted breeding stock is normally available. There are several sources where you can look for organic stock:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <a href="#">The Organic Marketplace</a></li> <li>- <b>Similar platforms on other Certification Bodies'</b> websites</li> <li>- Organic marketing groups</li> <li>- Organic sales at livestock markets and private sales</li> </ul>



	<p>- Online auctions. Organic Poultry suppliers in the UK are listed <a href="#">here</a>.</p> <p>Animals eligible to be considered as a rare breed must meet the conditions in <a href="#">Annex IV to Commission Regulation (EC) No 1974/2006</a>.</p>
<p><b>3.2.6 Exceptional rules for poultry</b></p> <p>1. When you are establishing for the first time, renewing or reconstituting a flock, non-organic poultry may be brought in <b>only</b> when organic poultry are not available in sufficient numbers. If you have to bring in non-organic poultry you must in order of preference:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>use pullets for egg production, or chicks for meat production, that have been kept to organic standards from three days of age, if they are available.</li> <li>use non-organic pullets for egg production before they are 18 weeks old. Any non-organic pullets you bring in must have been reared to the veterinary and feed standards detailed in sections 3.4 and 3.10.</li> </ol> <p>2. You must have prior authorisation from your competent authority before bringing in any non-organic poultry. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 22(2)(b)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 42</i></p>	<p>Organic Poultry suppliers in the UK are listed <a href="#">here</a>.</p> <p>If you are bringing in non-organic poultry you must have permission from your competent authority before you bring them onto the holding. In GB, permission is granted by the competent authority and we will submit an application on your behalf. You must show us that organic poultry is not available in sufficient numbers.</p> <p>We will need the following details from you to submit to the competent authority:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>why you cannot source organic birds</li> <li>which organic suppliers you have contacted</li> <li>the number of birds you need</li> <li>the number of non-organic birds you plan to bring in and when</li> <li>the name of your suppliers</li> <li>whether any suppliers will be able to supply you with organic birds in future.</li> </ul> <p>A form with all the relevant questions is available on our <a href="#">website</a> or from the Certification Team.</p>
<p><b>3.2.7 Additional rules for the sourcing of non-organic poultry</b></p> <p>1. If you bring in non-organic poultry, you must not bring in:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>poultry from cage systems, or</li> <li>poultry whose beaks have been clipped or tipped. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></li> </ol>	<p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Why?</b></p> <p>Using cage reared birds not only conflicts with organic principles but also presents a welfare risk to birds by predisposing them to a range of behavioural problems which can be carried over to their new free-range environment.</p> <p>Beak tipping or clipping birds, which is standard practice in non-organic systems, is a mutilation which is unnecessary when the birds are kept</p>	

under conditions which satisfy their behavioural needs.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.2.8 Exceptional rules due to catastrophic circumstances</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. In the case of high mortality caused by health or catastrophic circumstances, you may renew or reconstitute your herd or flock with non-organic animals, when organically reared animals are not available and provided that the respective conversion periods are applied to the non-organic animals. Your competent authority must authorise this.</li><li>2. Upon approval by the competent authority you must keep documentary evidence of the use of this exception. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 22(2)(f)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 47(a)</i></li></ol>	<p>In GB, the Certification Team can submit a request to Defra, the competent authority. This permission needs to be in place before you bring in non-organic livestock.</p> <p>An example of high mortality caused by ill health may be a TB outbreak.</p>

### 3.3 Keeping organic and non-organic livestock

#### What is this chapter about?

This section details when conventional and organic livestock production on the same holding is permitted and how separation must be maintained.

#### Standards

#### Guidance

##### 3.3.1 Keeping non-organic livestock

1. On your organic holding you may only keep non-organic livestock provided that they are:
  - a) a different species to your organic stock,
  - b) kept on clearly separate parcels of land, and
  - c) kept in clearly separate buildings.
2. You must have adequate records to show separation.  
*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 11; Art. 14(v)*  
*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 17(1)(5)*

Non-organic livestock enterprises can only graze the organic land provided they meet the criteria in standard 3.3.3.

Livestock kept as pets or for your own use only and not as a commercial enterprise may be kept on your organic holding and do not have to be kept to organic standards. If they have access to organic land they must be fed non-GM feed.

If you sell any products from your non-organic livestock, this becomes a non-organic commercial enterprise and you must meet this standard.



Records demonstrating separation


##### 3.3.2 Parallel production exceptions

Your competent authority may authorise you to keep organic and non-organic livestock of the same species, on your organic holding, if you are carrying out agricultural research or formal education, where the following conditions are met:

- a) appropriate measures, notified in advance to us, have been taken in order to guarantee the permanent separation between livestock, livestock products, manure and feedstuffs of each of the units
- b) you must inform us in advance of any delivery or selling of the livestock or livestock products, and
- c) you must tell us of the exact quantities of livestock or livestock products you produce, how you have identified them and confirm to us that you have applied all of the measures you have agreed with us.


*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 22(1)(a)*  
*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 40(2)*


In GB, permission is granted by Defra the competent authority and we will submit an application on your behalf. Contact the Certification Team for more information.




<p><b>3.3.3 Grazing non-organic stock on your land</b></p> <p>1. You may graze non-organic stock on your organic or converting land for a limited time if:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>they come from extensive husbandry or a system with a maximum stocking rate equivalent to 170kg of nitrogen per hectare per year, and</li> <li>you do not graze organic animals on those fields at the same time.</li> </ol> <p>2. You must have records of your use of this provision. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 17(2)(5)</i></p>	<p>In GB, Defra the competent authority usually limits the amount of time to a maximum of 120 days per calendar year that non-organic animals are on your whole holding, not on individual fields.</p> <p>Refer to standard 3.6.3 on maximum stocking rates.</p> <p> Records of non-organic stock grazing your land</p>
--	---

<h3>3.4 Keeping animals healthy and treating disease</h3>	
<p><b>What's this chapter about?</b></p> <p>Organic farming aims to maintain animal health through prevention of disease and minimising the use of veterinary medicines. This section contains standards on how disease is prevented and what to do if any animals become sick or injured.</p>	
<p><b>Standards</b></p>	<p><b>Guidance</b></p>
<p><b>3.4.1 Preventing disease and injury</b></p> <p>Disease management must be based on preventative measures. You must draw up a health plan to show how you will build health and reduce disease. This must be tailored to suit your own farm and should allow you to minimise your use of veterinary medicines. Preventative measures include:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>breed and strain selection</li> <li>husbandry management practices</li> <li>high quality feed and exercise</li> <li>appropriate stocking density, and</li> <li>adequate and appropriate housing maintained in hygienic conditions.</li> </ol> <p><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 5(e)(I); Art. 14(1)(e)(i)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 63(1)(b)</i></p>	<p>You must be able to demonstrate that you take preventative measures to limit your animal health problems. If health problems occur you must review your management, take appropriate action and monitor its effectiveness.</p> <p>Examples of preventative husbandry practices include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>biosecurity measures</li> <li>grazing and range management</li> <li>stockmanship and welfare assessments</li> <li>breeding and culling management.</li> </ul> <p>We strongly recommend that you consult with your vet on health planning and review where any improvements can be made annually.</p> <p>Livestock management plan templates can be found on our <a href="#">website</a>.</p> <p>Include details of the biosecurity measures you implement when bringing new or returning animals onto your farm and managing diseased stock. This could</p>

	<p>include isolation, blood testing, TB testing, buying from disease-free sources, direct sources, double fencing.</p> <p>Include also the biosecurity measures you implement on your farm to limit the risk of specific diseases to your animals, such as restricting badger access to water troughs and feed, good manure management, and preventing disease transmission from neighbouring herds via shared equipment, brought-in manure or direct contact.</p> <p>For more information on suitable measures refer to <a href="#">government advice</a> and advisory services. For example, for bovine TB consult <a href="#">TB Hub</a> or contact the <a href="#">TB Advisory Service</a> for free farm visits and bespoke advice.</p> <p>To reduce the risk of introducing disease you should avoid sourcing livestock from livestock markets and collection centres.</p> <p>Pasture should be managed to minimise disease and parasite burdens. Frequent disease and parasite monitoring will help you to assess the effectiveness of your pasture management. The welfare of your animals will be assessed at inspection and this will be used to indicate the effectiveness of your preventative measures.</p>
<p><b>3.4.2 Quarantine</b> If you obtain livestock from non-organic units, special measures such as screening tests or quarantine periods may apply, depending on local circumstances. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 23(3)</i></p>	<p>In your health plan, include details of the biosecurity measures you implement when bringing new or returning animals, including any organic animals, onto your farm and managing diseased stock.</p> <p>This could include isolation, blood testing, TB testing, buying from disease free sources, direct sources, double fencing. For more information on suitable measures refer to <a href="#">government advice</a> and the <a href="#">TB Advisory Service</a>.</p>
<p><b>3.4.3 Treating disease and injury</b> 1. If an animal becomes sick or injured they must be treated immediately, if necessary in isolation and in suitable housing. 2. When treating you must use phytotherapeutic and homeopathic products and the trace elements, vitamins and minerals listed in standard 3.10.14 in preference to chemically-synthesised allopathic veterinary treatment or</p>	<p>It is your responsibility to ensure that any treatments and veterinary products you use are licensed or have veterinary approval for the intended purpose.</p> <p>You must be able to demonstrate that you are treating animals affected by disease, injury or ill-health quickly and effectively. The use and application of treatments should be given under professional guidance or after appropriate training.</p>

<p>antibiotics, provided that their healing effect works for the animal species and the condition you are treating.</p> <p>3. Where these treatments are inappropriate or will not be effective to avoid suffering or distress of the animal, chemically-synthesised allopathic veterinary medicinal products or antibiotics may be used under the responsibility of your vet.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(e)(ii)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 24(1)(2)(3)</i></p>	<p>Inspectors will check that animals have been identified and treated promptly for all disease and injuries, including the management of common diseases and injuries such as lameness, scour, pneumonia and mastitis.</p> <p>If the treatment is not effective and the animal will not recover you must euthanise the animal to prevent suffering.</p> <p> Veterinary medicines records. See standard 1.7.10 for more information on records required.</p>
<p><b>3.4.4 Identifying treated animals</b></p> <p>Whenever veterinary medicines are used livestock treated must be clearly identified, individually in the case of large animals; individually, or by batch, or by hive, in the case of poultry, small animals and bees.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 77</i></p>	
<p><b>3.4.5 Veterinary medicines for preventative treatment are prohibited</b></p> <p>You must <b>not</b> use chemically synthesised allopathic veterinary medicines or antibiotics for preventative treatment in the absence of illness or surgical intervention.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 23(1)</i></p>	<p>This does not apply to analgesia and anaesthesia and vaccines.</p>
<p><b>3.4.6 Use of vaccines is permitted</b></p> <p>You may use immunological veterinary medicines.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(e)(iii)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.4.7 Growth promoters are prohibited</b></p> <p>You must <b>not</b> use substances to promote growth or production of your animals (such as antibiotics, coccidiostatics and other artificial aids for growth promotion purposes).</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(d)(v)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 23(2)</i></p>	<p>Any veterinary products or nutritional supplements must only be used to treat known nutritional deficiencies or disease and not to promote growth or production.</p>
<p><b>3.4.8 Hormone treatments are prohibited</b></p> <p>You must <b>not</b> use hormones or similar substances to control reproduction or for other purposes (e.g. induction or</p>	<p>You may give hormone treatments to individual animals if you need to induce parturition for welfare reasons, or for specific disorders where you have no alternative, for example cows which are not coming into heat. You may not use hormones to manipulate normal reproductive cycles/physiology.</p>

<p>synchronisation of oestrus), unless as a form of veterinary therapeutic treatment for an individual animal.  (EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(c)(ii)  (EC) 889/2008 Art. 23(2)</p>	
<p><b>3.4.9 Artificial insemination is permitted</b>  You may use artificial insemination.  (EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(c)(i)</p>	
<p><b>3.4.10 Cloning or embryo transfer is prohibited</b>  You must <b>not</b> use cloning or embryo transfer.  (EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(c)(iii)</p>	
<p><b>3.4.11 The use of critically important antibiotics is restricted</b>  You must <b>not</b> use critically important antibiotics except when no other treatment would be effective.  <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>The following antibiotics are considered critically important antibiotics (CIAs):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fluoroquinolone antibiotics</li> <li>• Third and fourth generation cephalosporin antibiotics</li> </ul> <p>We will review the list of CIAs regularly and it may change to ensure the most important antibiotics are protected.</p> <p> Where these antibiotics have been used you must have veterinary justification for their use available at inspection in one or more of the following forms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• post mortem reports</li> <li>• results from sensitivity tests</li> <li>• vet site visit reports</li> <li>• veterinary instructions</li> </ul> <p>The following drugs are commonly licensed fluoroquinolones and third and fourth generation cephalosporins in the UK: enrofloxacin, danofloxacin, marbofloxacin, difloxacin, ceftiofur, cefoparazone and cefquinome. This is not a complete list and the range of drugs may change, you can check on <a href="#">VMD website</a> or liaise with your vet.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Why?</b></p> <p>Antibiotics play a vital role in treating infections in both animals and people. Antibiotics are often used in agriculture to control infections that can instead be avoided by less intensive ways of farming. As there are only a limited number of antibiotic classes available, some classes are used to treat both people and animals. Some of these classes of antibiotics are critically important for human health as they are relied upon to treat very sick patients. To protect the effectiveness of these critically important antibiotics we restrict their use in organic farming.</p>	


Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.4.12 The use of colistin is prohibited</b>            You must not use colistin.  <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>We recommend that you advise your vet of this standard restriction so s/he can advise you on the best alternative treatment options.</p> <p>You can check on <a href="#">VMD website</a> for the complete list of licensed colistin antibiotics in the UK.</p> <p> Veterinary medicine records.</p> <p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><i>Why?</i></p> <p>Colistin is a critically important antibiotic used as a life-saving treatment for serious human infections like <i>E. coli</i>. It is also used in farming for the prevention and treatment of non-invasive (enteric) <i>E. coli</i>. Although there have been major cuts in colistin use in the UK, it is still one of the five most commonly used antibiotics in veterinary medicine within the EU.</p> <p>Scientists believe that colistin resistance is likely to be transferring from farm animals to humans. This is highly concerning because no new antibiotics have been discovered to treat <i>E. coli</i> infections for about 35 years. Colistin can be the only antibiotic which works to treat serious infections in humans. To protect its effectiveness as a life-saving human treatment we prohibit its use on Soil Association organic farms.</p>	
Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.4.13 Organophosphorus and organochlorine products are prohibited</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. You must not use organophosphorus or organochlorine (gamma HCH) compounds for treatment of animals in any form for any purpose unless you are required to by law.</li> <li>2. If you are required by law to use organophosphorus compounds or organochlorine (gamma HCH) then you must not:           <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) use any treated animals for Soil Association organic meat production, or</li> <li>b) sell the milk of any treated dairy animals as Soil Association organic. You must re-convert them before they can produce organic milk.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Sheep dips containing the active substance Dimpylate are the only organophosphate or organochlorine substances currently licensed in the UK. If you do not know whether the product you wish to use contains this active substance you can check on the <a href="#">VMD website</a>, or ask your vet or certification officer.</p> <p> Records of disease prevention and veterinary medicines used.</p> <p>If you are required to use these products by law you need to keep documentary evidence and identify the treated animals, which can be checked at inspection.</p>



### Why?

Organophosphates are used in sheep dips and are acutely toxic. They have been linked with a range of problems including decreased male fertility, foetal **abnormalities, chronic fatigue syndrome and Parkinson's disease**. Organophosphates are also highly toxic to the aquatic environment.

Organochlorine insecticides are extremely persistent in the environment and have severe negative impacts on wildlife and the environment. They last a very long time in the human body and are associated with increased risk of cancer, developmental delays and disruption of endocrine function.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.4.14 Compulsory treatments are permitted</b> Treatments which are required by law are allowed. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(e)(iv)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.4.15 Number of permitted treatments</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. You must <b>not</b> sell your livestock or their produce as organic if, within 12 months, you treat them with more than:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) three courses of chemically-synthesised allopathic veterinary medicines or antibiotics, or</li> <li>b) one course of chemically-synthesised allopathic veterinary medicines or antibiotics if their lifecycle is less than a year.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. You must keep records of these treatments.</li> <li>3. If an individual animal is treated over these limits they must undergo reconversion if you wish to sell their products as organic, refer to section 3.1 on conversion periods.</li> <li>4. Excluded from this are vaccines, parasite control treatments and compulsory eradication schemes. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 24(4)</i></li> </ol>	<p>A course of treatment means all the measures you need to take to restore the health of your animal following one occurrence of a specific illness.</p> <p> You records will need to identify any animals and their products which cannot be sold as organic or need to reconvert.</p>

<p><b>3.4.16 Withdrawal periods</b>          If you treat your animals with any allopathic veterinary medicinal products you must wait twice the legal withdrawal period as referred to in Article 11 of <i>Directive 2001/82/EC</i>, and no less than 48 hours, before you can sell your livestock products as organic.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 24(5)</i></p>	<p>You must have an effective system in place to ensure that treated animals or their products are not sold for consumption as organic during the withdrawal period.</p> <p><b>R</b> Both statutory and organic withdrawal periods must be recorded.</p> <p>If veterinary medicinal products are prescribed under the Cascade, you must implement twice the withdrawal period as legally required under the Cascade.</p> <p><b>I</b> If there is no suitable veterinary medicine authorised in the UK to treat a condition in a particular species, vets are permitted to use unauthorised veterinary medicines in accordance with the Cascade.</p> <p>Vaccines are not subject to this requirement. Only the specified legal withdrawal periods must be observed.</p> <p>If you fail an antibiotic test (that is, your animals are over the maximum residue limit) you must inform us. We will expect you to identify the cause of the contamination and what you will do to prevent this happening in the future.</p> <p>You must inform the Certification Team if you have any suspicion that your livestock products may not meet organic standards.</p>
<p><b>3.4.17 Storing veterinary medicines</b>          You may store allopathic veterinary medicinal products and antibiotics on holdings provided that they have been prescribed by a veterinarian in connection with a treatment given under standard 3.4.3 They must be stored in a secure location and must be entered in the livestock record as required in standard 1.7.10.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 35(3)</i></p>	<p><b>R</b> Records of all veterinary medicines stored. See standard 1.7.10 for full requirements on veterinary medicine records.</p>

## 3.5 Animal welfare management

### What is this chapter about?

This section details how animal welfare is maintained on organic farms and how it will be measured at inspection.

### Standards

#### 3.5.1 Maintaining good animal welfare

1. You must ensure your husbandry practices and housing, including stocking densities, meet your animals' species-specific developmental, physiological and behavioural needs at all times.
2. The persons looking after your animals must possess the necessary knowledge and skills to satisfy this standard.
3. Any suffering must be kept to a minimum during the entire life of the animal, including at the time of slaughter.  
(EC) 834/2007 Art. 5(h); Art. 14(1)(b)(i)(ii)(viii)

### Guidance

Regularly assess your animals to ensure their health and welfare and watch for signs of distress, disease and injury. Routine monitoring of the welfare of your animals will allow you to recognise problems and identify areas for improvement. If you would like more information and support on monitoring the welfare of your animals see our [Advisory Support pages](#) or contact Producer Support or the Certification Team.

If there is a welfare problem, prompt action must be taken, the effectiveness of which must be reviewed and altered if necessary. If a welfare problem is found at your inspection then you must describe what steps you will take to resolve the issue in your *Action Summary Form and Declaration* and it will be discussed at the following inspection.


The welfare of your animals will be assessed at inspection. For the major farm animal species your Inspector may use the following welfare outcomes measures to inform the decision on your compliance with this standard. However these lists are not exhaustive, your inspector will have other indicators and observations they use when assessing the welfare of stock. For measures marked with an \* you will need to have these figures ready at your inspection.

For more information on each measure see the 'explanation of measures' pages on the [AssureWel website](#).







#### Species





#### Welfare outcome measures


Laying hens

- Feather loss
- Bird dirtiness
- Antagonistic behaviours such as aggressive behaviour and injurious feather pecking
- Flightiness
- Birds that need further care
- Mortality records\* 

Species	Welfare outcome measures
Dairy cows	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mobility, including lameness</li> <li>• Body condition</li> <li>• Cleanliness</li> <li>• Hair loss and lesions</li> <li>• Swellings</li> <li>• Broken tails</li> <li>• Response to stockperson</li> <li>• Mastitis records* (see details below) <span style="color: red; font-weight: bold;">Ⓜ</span></li> <li>• Calf/Heifer survivability records* (see details below) <span style="color: red; font-weight: bold;">Ⓜ</span></li> <li>• Cull and Casualty Cows records* (see details below) <span style="color: red; font-weight: bold;">Ⓜ</span></li> </ul>
Pigs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enrichment use</li> <li>• Lameness</li> <li>• Ear and flank biting lesions and other body marks</li> <li>• Pigs needing further care</li> <li>• Hospital pens</li> <li>• Manure on the body</li> <li>• Leg swellings</li> <li>• Skin conditions</li> <li>• Tail lesions (finishers only)</li> <li>• Shoulder lesions, vulva lesions and body condition (dry sows only)</li> <li>• Mortality records* <span style="color: red; font-weight: bold;">Ⓜ</span></li> <li>• Antibiotic records* <span style="color: red; font-weight: bold;">Ⓜ</span></li> </ul>
Species	Welfare outcome measures
Broilers These measures are still being developed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bird distribution</li> <li>• Air quality</li> <li>• Panting</li> <li>• Dirtiness</li> </ul>


		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enrichment</li> <li>• Walking ability</li> <li>• Birds requiring culling</li> <li>• Dead birds and runts</li> <li>• Litter condition</li> <li>• Behaviour</li> <li>• Pododermatitis and Hock burn</li> <li>• Mortality records* </li> <li>• Antibiotic records* </li> <li>• Post-slaughter records </li> </ul>
	Beef cattle	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lameness</li> <li>• Cleanliness</li> <li>• Body Condition Score (adult breeding animals only)</li> <li>• Hair loss, lesions or swellings</li> <li>• Cattle needing further care</li> <li>• Animals with respiratory signs</li> <li>• Pneumonia treatments* </li> <li>• Mortality records* </li> </ul>
	Sheep	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lameness</li> <li>• Body Condition Score (thin sheep)</li> <li>• Dirtiness</li> <li>• Fleece loss</li> <li>• Sheep needing further care</li> <li>• Mortality records* </li> </ul>
<p>For dairy cows you will need to show additional records of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of cases of mastitis per 100 cows</li> <li>• Number of losses per 100 cows calved for the following categories: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>v) 0 - 24hrs - all calves (including stillborn)</li> <li>vi) 24 hrs - 42 days - all calves</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

	<p>vii) 42 days - 1st calving - dairy heifers viii) 1st calving - 2nd calving - dairy heifers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of planned culls</li> <li>• Number of unplanned culls or casualty cows (died or killed on farm)</li> <li>• Number of enforced culls, for example TB culls</li> </ul> <p>At inspection, we may use the <a href="#">Codes of Recommendations for the Welfare of Livestock</a> as a measure of compliance to this standard.</p>
Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.5.2 Animal mutilations are restricted</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. You must not routinely carry out operations such as tail docking, cutting of teeth, trimming of beaks and disbudding or dehorning. These practices may be authorised by your competent authority for reasons of safety, or to improve the health, welfare or hygiene of the animals on a case-by-case basis.</li> <li>2. You may only castrate in order to maintain the quality of products and traditional production practices.</li> <li>3. When performing these operations any suffering to the animals must be reduced by applying adequate anaesthesia and/or analgesia and by qualified personnel carrying out the operation only at the most appropriate age.</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(viii)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 18(1)(2)</i></p>	<p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p> <p>If you wish to tail dock, disbud or dehorn your animals you must provide reasons for why it is necessary and how and when it will be carried out and what pain relief will be given in your health plan. In GB we can authorise these practices on the competent authority's behalf if the relevant criteria are met.</p> <p> The <a href="#">Codes of Recommendations</a> provide advice on the appropriate methods and ages to perform these practices, as well as the relevant legal requirements in GB.</p> <p> In the UK under the <i>Veterinary Surgery Act 1966</i>, as amended, only a veterinary surgeon may castrate a calf which has reached the age of two months and a lamb which has reached the age of three months.</p> <p>As required in the Mutilations (permitted procedures) Regulations 2007, for sheep and cattle (only for castration), the use of a rubber ring, or other device, to restrict the flow of blood to the scrotum or tail, is only allowed if carried out during the first week of life.</p> <p> In the UK under <i>The Protection of Animals (Anaesthetics) Act 1954</i>, as amended, it is an offence to disbud calves or dehorn any cattle without the use of an anaesthetic other than when chemical cauterisation is used. Chemical cauterisation may only be used during the first week of life. The <i>Code of Recommendations for the Welfare of Cattle</i> strongly recommends that chemical cauterisation should not be used.</p>

<p><b>3.5.3 Pig mutilations are prohibited</b>          You must not carry out, or allow anyone else to carry out, the following procedures on your pigs:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>tail docking</li> <li>teeth cutting or grinding</li> <li>castration</li> <li>ringing.</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p> <p><b>3.5.4 Poultry mutilations are prohibited</b>          You must not carry out, or allow anyone else to carry out, the following procedures on your poultry:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>beak clipping or tipping</li> <li>pinioning or clipping primary flight feathers</li> <li>desnooding</li> <li>de-toeing</li> <li>dubbing</li> <li>de-spurring</li> <li>caaponise</li> <li>any other mutilations.</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>You are not permitted to carry out or bring in pigs or poultry which have undergone the pig and poultry mutilations detailed in 3.5.3 and 3.5.4 under Soil Association higher standards. Eggs from beak-tipped birds cannot be sold as Soil Association organic.</p> <p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>
--	---

**Why?**

Evidence shows that mutilations cause considerable pain and stress, and can reduce the ability of animals to perform natural behaviours. Pig and poultry mutilations often do not address the underlying cause of the problem which can be solved through changes in management practices which allow animals to express natural behaviours.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.5.5 Dairy calves</b>            You must have a system in place to minimise the production of male dairy calves that are unsuitable for rearing for meat production.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p> In your livestock management plan you must detail the breeding and management strategy that you have in place to prevent the routine euthanasia of bull calves.</p> <p>To minimise the number of unwanted male dairy calves you need to show in your livestock management plan that you have considered:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Using sexed semen (you must detail in your livestock management plan if there are reasons you cannot use sexed semen)</li> <li>Identifying a market for your dairy bull calves,</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>changing your breeding strategy to use more robust breeds more suited to rearing for beef.</li> </ul> <p>We recognise that in certain situations, such as when farms are under TB movement restrictions, it may be difficult to avoid culling male dairy calves when the facilities or means to rear them are not available due to the inability to move any animals off farm. You should have a strategy for calf rearing in the event of TB or other movement restrictions.</p>
--	--


### Why?

The Soil Association wants to see an end to the slaughter of male dairy calves at a young age that are currently judged unsuitable for meat production. We encourage and support our producers to consider their breeding strategy to minimise the number of unsaleable calves being born.

## 3.6 Outdoor access and grazing

### What is this chapter about?

Organic farming is an extensive system of farming and aims to keep animals outside and on pasture whenever weather and environmental conditions allow. See also the respective species specific sections for the additional standards that apply for those species.


Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.6.1 Pasture access</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You must allow <b>all</b> your herbivore and poultry species permanent access to pasture, unless the following circumstances temporarily prevent this: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the health or welfare of the animal</li> <li>the weather conditions and the state of the ground, or</li> <li>community or national requirements or restrictions relating to specific animal or human health problems.</li> </ol> </li> <li>Breeding bulls over one year old must have access to pasture or an open air run of at least 30 m<sup>2</sup>.  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(iii)(d)(iii)</i>  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 14(2)(4)</i> </li> </ol>	<p>You need to take account of both weather conditions and the state of the ground when deciding whether livestock should be out at pasture. Give consideration to the impact on the health and welfare of livestock and the management of the soil and pasture.</p> <p>For more information on methods to minimise soil damage refer to the guidance to standard 2.4.1 'Managing your soil'.</p> <p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>



<p>3. For Soil Association organic production you must allow your pigs permanent access to pasture or vegetated range, unless the circumstances listed in 3.6.1.1 prevent this.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>			
<p><b>Why?</b></p> <p>We believe that all animals should be given the freedom to roam and graze pasture, whenever conditions allow. Providing animals with access to pasture gives them a more natural life and the opportunity to express natural behaviours such as rooting and wallowing for pigs, dustbathing and ground pecking for chickens, and grazing for cows and sheep. All organic animals have a truly free-range life.</p>			
Standards		Guidance	
<p><b>3.6.2 Landless livestock production is prohibited</b>          You must not operate landless livestock production, where you do not manage agricultural land and/or have a written cooperation agreement with another organic operator associated with your livestock enterprise.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 5 (g)</i>  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 16</i></p>	<p>All organic terrestrial livestock production is land-based. The organic land does not have to be owned by the livestock manager but there must be a written agreement between the livestock enterprise manager and land owner, including the use of the land for grazing and the use of the land for spreading manure.</p>		
<p><b>3.6.3 Managing pasture and ranges</b>          You must manage your stock and keep their stocking density low enough to prevent:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) poaching of the soil</li> <li>b) over-grazing of vegetation</li> <li>c) the application of more than 170kg of nitrogen/ha/year, and</li> <li>d) pollution.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(iv)</i>  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 3(2); Art. 15(1)</i></p>	<p>You must be able to demonstrate how you manage pasture and outdoor ranges to prevent poaching and over-grazing. This could include a rotation plan. Refer to standard 3.6.4 to calculate the maximum stocking rate.</p> <p>The amount of nitrogen in livestock manure that is applied to your farm includes manure applied directly by grazing animals and by spreading. This must be calculated over a calendar year (i.e. a year beginning 1 January). The <b>170kg of nitrogen/ha is the 'loading limit' and is averaged over the farmed area of the organic unit.</b></p>		
<p><b>3.6.4 Stocking densities</b>          To comply with the 170kg of nitrogen/ha/year limit you must not exceed the following stocking densities.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 15(2)</i></p>	<p>Defra have produced the following guidance for stocking densities for GB.</p> <p>The table below has been taken from Nitrate Vulnerable Zones (NVZs) guidelines.</p>		
	Livestock type	Category	Maximum stocking rate per hectare
	Pigs	7kg <13 kg	170

		13kg <31kg	40
		31kg < 66kg	22
		66kg > intended for slaughter	16
		Breeding sow before first litter	15
		Sow with litter up to 7kg	9
		Breeding boar 66kg - 150kg	14
		Breeding boar >150kg	10
	<b>Cattle</b>	Calves up to 2 months	21
		Dairy cows 2 months to <12 months	5
		Dairy cows 12 months to first calf	3
		Dairy cows after first calf	2
		Beef cows or steers 2 months <12 months	5
		Beef cows or steers 12 months <24 months	3
		Beef cows or steers from 24 months for slaughter	3
		Females from 24 months for breeding, < 500kg	3
		Females from 24 months for breeding, > 500kg	2
		Bulls, non-breeding >2 months	3
		Bulls for breeding, 2 months <24 months	3
		Bulls for breeding >24 months	4
	<b>Livestock type</b>	<b>Category</b>	<b>Maximum stocking rate per hectare</b>
	<b>Sheep</b>	6 months – 9 months	85
		From 9 months to first lambing, tugging or slaughter	121
		After lambing or tugging <60kg.	22
		After lambing or tugging >60kg.	14
	<b>Goats</b>		11
	<b>Deer</b>	Breeding	11
		Other	14
	<b>Horses</b>		8
	<b>Poultry</b>	Layers <17 weeks	800

	Layers >17 weeks*	320*
	Broilers	510
	Breeding stock <25 weeks	590
	Breeding stock >25 weeks	240
	Male turkey	140
	Female turkey	190
	Ducks	230
* Figures assume 80% of excreta are deposited in buildings		
<b>Standards</b>	<b>Guidance</b>	
<p><b>3.6.5 Protecting your stock</b>            You must provide sufficient protection for your stock against predation and rain, wind, sun and extreme temperatures, depending on local conditions and breed.  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(ii)</i></p>	<p>You must be able to demonstrate what measures you have in place and how you monitor that they are effective. For example, monitoring mortality rates from predation, exposure, sunburn, heat exhaustion, use of range, condition of livestock etc.</p> <p>Shade provision should allow animals to reduce at least 30 - 50% of their total heat load and can be natural or artificial. Natural shade, such as trees, is often more effective due to the cooling effect of the water evaporation. Pigs will also need wallows over the summer months to protect against the heat and the sun. Shelter can be natural or artificial as long as it provides effective protection against prevailing conditions.</p> <p><b>I</b> Examples of protection could include, as appropriate:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Trees, hedges</li> <li>• Rocks, ridges</li> <li>• Scrub, tussocks</li> <li>• Drystone walls</li> <li>• Brashings</li> <li>• Field shelters</li> <li>• Bales</li> <li>• Buildings</li> <li>• Long grass</li> <li>• Wallows</li> </ul>	

	<p>Extremes of temperature will limit the productivity of an animal as well as potentially compromising its welfare. Providing cattle, sheep, pigs and goats with shade and shelter at pasture gives them the opportunity to minimise the effects of heat stress and inclement weather conditions, which can lead to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• better food conversion and growth rates</li> <li>• better survival rates of young animals</li> <li>• increased pasture growth and utilisation, with animals spread out to graze and ruminate.</li> </ul>
<p><b>3.6.6 Grazing your organic stock on common land</b></p> <p>1. You may graze your organic animals on common land only if:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) you can show that the land has not been treated with any products which are not permitted in these organic standards for at least three years</li> <li>b) any non-organic stock which graze the land come from a farming system equivalent to those described in Art. 36 of <i>Regulation 1698/2005</i> (Council Regulation on support for rural development by the European Agricultural Fund for Rural Development (EAGGF)) or <i>Art. 22 Regulation 1257/1999</i> (Council Regulation on support for rural development from the EAGGF and amending and repealing certain Regulations)</li> <li>c) you can show that there is adequate segregation from non-organic animals that use the land if you wish to sell their products as organic.</li> </ol> <p>2. You must keep records of the use of this provision.  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(v)</i>  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 17(3)(5)</i></p>	<p>In the UK common land is registered with the National Register of Common Land. If the common land is not officially registered you will have to add the land to your licence and put it through a 24 month conversion period.</p> <p>We regard common land differently from organic and list it as a separate category on your licence.</p> <p>Examples of adequate segregation can include, but are not limited to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• clearly hefted animals</li> <li>• clear identification, i.e. ear tags</li> <li>• methods to avoid access to non-organic feed</li> <li>• separate handling and treatment.</li> </ul>
<p><b>3.6.7 Grazing non-organic land during transhumance</b></p> <p>1. During the period of transhumance animals may graze non-organic land when they are being moved on foot from one grazing area to another. The uptake of non-organic feed, in the form of grass and other vegetation which the animals graze during this period must not exceed 10% of the total feed ration per year. This figure must be calculated</p>	<p> Records of transhumance</p>

<p>as a percentage of the dry matter of feedstuffs from agricultural origin.</p> <p>2. You must keep records of the use of this provision. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 17(4)(5)</i></p>	
---	--

3.7 Standards for pigs' outdoor access																					
Standards	Guidance																				
<p><b>3.7.1 Outside shelters</b> If you use field shelters and pig arcs, they must be covered, bedded and provide the following minimum lying area:</p>																					
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Class of pig</th> <th>Minimum lying area – covered and bedded for outside shelters (m<sup>2</sup>/head)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Breeding pigs</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Farrowing sows with piglets up to 28 days</td> <td>4.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dry sows and boars</td> <td>1.5</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Fattening pigs</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Up to 30kg (and over 40 days)</td> <td>0.30</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Up to 50kg</td> <td>0.40</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Up to 85kg</td> <td>0.65</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Up to 110kg</td> <td>0.80</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2" style="text-align: center;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Class of pig	Minimum lying area – covered and bedded for outside shelters (m <sup>2</sup> /head)	Breeding pigs		Farrowing sows with piglets up to 28 days	4.0	Dry sows and boars	1.5	Fattening pigs		Up to 30kg (and over 40 days)	0.30	Up to 50kg	0.40	Up to 85kg	0.65	Up to 110kg	0.80	<i>Soil Association higher standard</i>		<p>Where shelters are used instead of permanent housing and if climatic and soil conditions necessitate housing pigs, the shelters provided must meet the minimum housing requirements set out in Chapter 3.8.</p>
Class of pig	Minimum lying area – covered and bedded for outside shelters (m <sup>2</sup> /head)																				
Breeding pigs																					
Farrowing sows with piglets up to 28 days	4.0																				
Dry sows and boars	1.5																				
Fattening pigs																					
Up to 30kg (and over 40 days)	0.30																				
Up to 50kg	0.40																				
Up to 85kg	0.65																				
Up to 110kg	0.80																				
<i>Soil Association higher standard</i>																					
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Why?</b></p> <p>We set space requirements to ensure that shelters given to pigs provide them with enough space to rest and lie down comfortably and offer protection from the elements.</p>																					
Standards	Guidance																				

### 3.7.2 Rooting and dunging area provision

The outdoor area for pigs must allow your pigs to dung and root. For the purposes of rooting different substrates can be used.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 11(6)*

Pigs must be able to root and dung even when they are housed. Any outdoor area must provide enough material for all pigs to use whenever they want. Suitable rooting substrates include straw or green fodder (hay, grass, silage, alfalfa, etc.), wood shavings etc. Suitable substrate must allow the pigs to root using their snout and it must be regularly renewed, as pigs will normally lose interest in rooting material that is soiled with faeces. Frequent replacement with novel materials (e.g. that include fresh loose grains/seeds) will encourage greater rooting.

Manipulation and exploration of enrichment material with the mouth and snout is a good indicator that your substrate provision is suitable. Your inspector may **use the 'enrichment use' measure to determine whether you meet this standard.**



For more information on providing enrichment see the Agriculture and Horticulture Development Board (AHDB) Pork [website](#).

## 3.8 Housing livestock

### What is this chapter about?

This section includes the standards on how organic animals are housed. See also the respective species specific sections for the additional standards that apply for those species. Organic farming aims to ensure that the specific behavioural needs of animals are met. Housing conditions should provide enough light, space, comfort and sufficient space to allow ample freedom of movement and room for animals to express their natural behaviours.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.8.1 Keeping livestock outdoors</b>            You do not have to provide housing for your livestock if the climate and soil type in your area is suitable for your animals to live outdoors.  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 10(2)</i></p>	<p>You must provide housing for your animals if you cannot provide adequate shelter and there are not suitable ground conditions outside all year.</p> <p>You may use woodchip corrals or stand-off pads. Seek specialist, professional advice to ensure they meet the relevant statutory environmental requirements. As they are classed as housing, the stocking densities used must meet the requirements set out in standard 3.8.6.</p>
<p><b>3.8.2 Providing suitable housing</b>            1. Housing must provide the insulation, heating and ventilation necessary to ensure that air circulation, dust levels, temperature, humidity and gas concentrations are kept within limits that are not harmful to your animals.            2. Housing must permit plentiful natural ventilation and light to enter.  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 10(1)</i></p>	<p>Monitor your livestock to ensure that the housing conditions are suitable. Respiratory illnesses, for example coughing and eye and nasal discharge, may indicate a problem. At inspection we may measure environmental parameters such as ammonia and dust levels and use welfare outcome measures to assess the suitability of your housing e.g. the number of pneumonia treatments required.</p>
<p><b>3.8.3 Animals must be able to move freely</b>            1. All animals must be able to move freely. Animals must not be tethered or held in isolation.            2. You can only temporarily tether or isolate individual livestock for a limited period of time if this can be justified for safety, welfare or veterinary reasons.  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(vi)</i></p>	<p>If you house any breeding bulls in bull pens for specific reasons such as health and safety or animal welfare, and they are physically separate from other animals, you must keep them in sight of other animals in order to meet this standard.</p>
<p>3. You must not routinely tether your livestock over long periods. This includes cattle on smallholdings.  <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	

## Why?

The tethering of groups of cattle is still practiced on some traditional smallholdings in mountainous regions of Europe. We do not allow Soil Association producers to tether livestock because it prevents animals from freely performing their full range of natural behaviours and limits their behavioural opportunities or choices.

### 3.8.4 Stocking density

1. The stocking density in your animal housing must provide for:
  - a) the comfort and well-being of your animals
  - b) species-specific and behavioural needs, which will depend on their breed, sex, age and the size of the group, and
  - c) **the animals' welfare by providing sufficient space to stand naturally, lie down easily, turn round, groom themselves and make all natural movements such as stretching and wing flapping.**

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(ii)*

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 10(3)*

The minimum stocking densities are set out in standards 3.8.6, 3.8.7 and 3.8.8 **Consider your specific animals' needs when setting the stocking rates.** For example if you are keeping horned cattle together, you should provide extra lying and feeding space.

The welfare of your animals will be assessed at inspection and your inspector may use the following welfare outcome measures to inform the decision on your compliance with this standard:

#### Pigs

Body marks and lesions on pigs can be caused by keeping them at the wrong stocking density. Wounds of the head and shoulder are associated with fights for social rank, particularly in a restrictive environment that limits effective dispersal and the display of appropriate submissive behaviour.

#### Cattle

The identification of swellings and lesions on cattle can indicate obstructions in walkways and a lack of space for free movement.

If you use cubicles to house your cattle, you must be able to demonstrate that you have sufficient number and size of cubicles to meet each individual cow's needs. We would expect you to have at least 5% more functioning cubicles than the number of cows in the herd to ensure the cows can always find a cubicle to lie down in, away from conflict and bullying. The size of your cubicles must be suitable for the size, shape and weight of all your cattle.

Follow this link for guidelines for [cubicle dimensions](#).

### 3.8.5 Floor space and resting area for mammals

1. At least half the housing for mammal species must be a comfortable clean and dry resting/lying area, which is solid and not slippery and not slatted or of grid construction.
2. The resting/lying area must have ample dry bedding.



A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.

Natural materials used on the bedding must not have been treated with prohibited materials or substances which would prevent them from being applied to organic land. Examples of suitable bedding material are:



3. The bedding must comprise of straw or other suitable natural material and may be enriched with mineral products listed in standard 2.5.2.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(ii)*  
*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 11(1)(2)*

- natural materials such as bean haulm, bracken or rushes
- sawdust and wood shavings (from untreated wood only)
- sand
- non-organic straw.

If you use cubicles in your cattle housing, you must make sure they are comfortable and clean. If you are using rubber mats, mattresses, water beds or other cushioned materials, these on their own are not regarded as sufficient natural bedding material.

The welfare of your animals will be assessed at inspection. Your Inspector will use the following welfare outcomes measures to indicate whether you are meeting this standard:

- cattle: cleanliness, hair loss, lesions and swellings
- pigs: manure on the body and leg swellings
- sheep: fleece loss and dirtiness.

Lameness can be caused by animals slipping over and could demonstrate that the floor surface you are providing is slippery or damaging to feet. Slurry build up can cause foot problems.

### 3.8.6 Minimum housing area for cattle

1. When housing your animals you must give them at least the following space:

Class of animal	Minimum indoor space m <sup>2</sup> per head (net area available to animals)	Additional area required m <sup>2</sup> per head * (indoors or outdoors, excluding pasture)	Total m <sup>2</sup> per head
<b>Breeding and fattening cattle:</b>			
Up to 100 kg	1.5	1.1	2.6
Up to 200 kg	2.5	1.9	4.4
Up to 350 kg	4.0	3.0	7.0
Over 350 kg	5.0 with a minimum of 1m <sup>2</sup> /100kg	3.7 with a minimum of 0.75m <sup>2</sup> /100kg	8.7 with a minimum of 1.75m <sup>2</sup> /100kg
<b>Dairy cows</b>	6.0	4.5	10.5
<b>Bulls for breeding</b>	10	30*	40

When a bull is fully mature and used for breeding then the space allowance for 'Bulls for breeding' should be applied, if they are adolescent bulls, not yet at maturity the space requirements for 'breeding and fattening cattle' should be applied for all the animals in the group. If mature bulls are housed within a group made up of different ages or types e.g. Cows or adolescent bulls, then the space calculation should be made for the other cattle in the group with the additional space for the bull.

\* The additional area for bulls is not required if the bull is temporarily being run with cows provided the additional area is provided for all other animals within the group.

2. Open air areas may be partially covered.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 10(4); Art. 14(1)(3); Annex III*

3. The additional area must always be provided.

*Soil Association higher standard*

### Why?

Providing animals with enough space is an important factor which affects the welfare of farm animals. Cattle are typically kept indoors during the winter months to shelter them from the weather and to protect the pasture from damage. During these months it is important that cattle are given enough space to lie down, walk, feed and perform other behaviours, but also enough space for behavioural choice and freedom. We therefore require that our Soil Association producers always provide additional space at all times of the year.

### Standards

#### 3.8.7 Minimum housing area for sheep and goats

1. When housing your animals you must give them at least the following space:

Class of animal	Lying area or indoor area m <sup>2</sup> per head	Outdoor exercise area required m <sup>2</sup> per head Excluding pasture	Total m <sup>2</sup> per head
Sheep/goat	1.5	2.5	4
Lamb/kid	0.35	0.5	0.85

2. You do not need to provide the outdoor exercise area during the winter months provided that the winter-housing system allows freedom of movement and the livestock have access to pasture during the grazing period.

3. Open air areas may be partially covered.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(iii)*  
*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 10(4); Art. 14(1)(3); Annex III*

### Standards

#### 3.8.8 Minimum housing area for pigs

1. When housing your animals you must give them at least the following space:

Class of animal	Lying area or indoor area m <sup>2</sup> per head	Outdoor exercise area required m <sup>2</sup> per head Excluding pasture	Total m <sup>2</sup> per head
Farrowing sows with piglets up to 40 days	7.5	2.5	10
Piglets Over 40 days and up to 30 kg	0.6	0.4	1.0
<b>Fattening pigs</b>			
Up to 50 kg	0.8	0.6	1.4
Up to 85 kg	1.1	0.8	1.9
Up to 110 kg	1.3	1.0	2.3
<b>Breeding pigs</b>			
Sows	3.0 <i>Soil Association higher standard</i>	1.9	4.9
Boars	6 If pens are used for natural service: 10m <sup>2</sup> /boar	8.0	14 If pens are used for natural service: 18 m <sup>2</sup> /boar

2. Open air areas may be partially covered.

(EC) 889/2008 Art. 10(4); Art. 14(1)(3); Annex III

### Why?

We require breeding sows to have more space when they are housed indoors. This ensures that each sow has enough space to lie down and get up comfortably and has room to explore, root, feed and meet all their other behavioural needs.

Standards	Guidance
<b>3.8.9 Feed and water provision</b> Your livestock must always have easy access to feed and water. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(ii)</i>	<b>Feed</b> For animals fed <i>ad lib</i> you must feed them in a way that minimises bullying. For animals not given continuous access to feed, you must provide adequate feed space to ensure that all animals can feed at the same time and to avoid competition and aggression. The following is a guide to providing adequate feeding space for different livestock species: Sheep

- When feeding concentrate, 45cm of trough space and when feeding hay and silage, approximately 12-15cm of trough space per ewe. The size of the animals and presence or absence of horns should be taken into account.

Pigs

- Minimum trough space per pig when fed a rationed feed:

Weight of pig (kg)	Trough space (cm)
5	10
10	13
15	15
35	20
60	23
90	28
120	30

#### Water

To ensure that all animals, including animals pre-weaning, have access to water at all times, you should carefully consider the height of drinkers so that you ensure all livestock can access the drinking point.

The following is a guide to providing adequate water supply to different livestock species:

Cattle

- There should be enough water available for at least 10% of housed cattle to drink at any one time.




Pigs

- Where nipple drinkers are used, provide one drinker per ten pigs.

Nipple drinkers should have the following minimal flow rates for various weights of pigs:

Weight of pig (kg)	Flow rate (ml/min)
Newly weaned	300
Up to 20kg	500-100
20kg-40kg	1000-1500
Finishing pigs up to 100kg	1000-1500

	Sows and gilts – pre-service and in-pig	2000
	Sows and gilts – in lactation	2000
	Boars	2000
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Where troughs are used, provide 30cm of trough length per 10 pigs.</li> </ul> <p>Your Inspector will use the guidelines for feed and water space given above, to determine whether you are meeting this standard.</p>	
Standards	Guidance	
<p><b>3.8.10 Peat as a bedding material is prohibited</b>  You must <b>not</b> use peat as a bedding material.  <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>		
<p><b>Why?</b></p> <p>Peat is a precious resource that can take thousands of years to form. Peatlands are important habitats for a wide range of species and play a key role in preventing floods and storing carbon. For these reasons, and because bedding made from other materials is readily available, we prohibit the use of peat for this purpose. We also restrict the peat use in horticulture please see standard 2.5.4.</p>		
Standards	Guidance	
<p><b>3.8.11 Managing your housing to prevent disease and injury</b>  Your housing, pens, equipment and utensils must:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>be kept in a condition that is unlikely to cause your animals injury</li> <li>be properly cleaned and disinfected to prevent cross-infection and build-up of disease</li> <li>have faeces, urine and uneaten or spilt food removed as often as necessary to minimise smell and to avoid attracting insects or rodents.</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(e)(i)</i>  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 23(4)</i></p>	<p>Good hygiene in housing can reduce the prevalence of certain diseases such as scouring, pneumonia and watery mouth.</p> <p>The welfare of your animals will be assessed at inspection. Your inspector will use the following indicators to determine whether your housing may be causing injury to your animals:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Cattle:</b> lameness, cleanliness, presence of broken tails, hair loss, lesions and swellings and mastitis records</li> <li><b>Sheep:</b> lameness, cleanliness and fleece loss</li> <li><b>Pigs:</b> lameness, body marks, lesions and leg swellings</li> <li><b>Broilers:</b> dirtiness, walking ability, hock burn, pododermatitis</li> <li><b>Laying hens:</b> feather loss, dirtiness.</li> </ul> <p>The condition of facilities (such as gates and feeders) will also be taken into account to determine if they are likely to cause injury.</p>	


3.9 Housing standards for pigs and cattle	
Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.9.1 Housing pigs indoors</b> If you need to house your pigs indoors you must keep your sows in groups, except in the last stages of pregnancy and during the suckling period.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(ii)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 11(4)</i></p>	<p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p> <p>You may still keep your sows in groups during the last stages of pregnancy and the suckling period.</p>
<p><b>3.9.2 Farrowing crates are prohibited</b> You must <b>not</b> use farrowing crates.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 10(3)</i></p>	<p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>
<p><b>3.9.3 Keeping piglets on flat decks or in cages is prohibited</b> You must <b>not</b> keep piglets on flat decks or in piglet cages.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 11(5)</i></p>	<p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>
<p><b>3.9.4 Housing during the final fattening phase</b> You may finish your cattle in well-bedded spacious yards, provided this period is less than one fifth of their lifetime and is no more than three months.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 22(2)(d)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 46</i></p>	<p>This is in addition to any normal winter housing period.</p>
<p><b>3.9.5 Keeping calves in individual pens</b> You must <b>not</b> keep calves in individual pens after they are seven days old.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(vi)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 10(3); Art. 11(3)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.9.6 Exceptional production rules for tethering</b> As an exception, due to climatic, geographical or structural constraints, competent authorities may authorise cattle in small holdings to be tethered if it is not possible to keep them in groups appropriate to their behaviour requirements. The animals concerned are to have daily access to pasture during</p>	<p>This provision only applies to small, traditional holdings where geographical and structural differences in agriculture and climatic constraints require the use of this exception.</p> <p>We do not allow the use of this provision in the UK as the UK is not subject to the same geographical and structural constraints as found in the mountainous regions of mainland Europe.</p>

the grazing period, or at least twice a week access to open air exercise areas where conditions preclude access to pasture.  
*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 22(2)(a)*  
*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 39*

### 3.10 Feeding livestock

#### What is this chapter about?

The aim of these organic standards is to feed organic livestock grass, fodder or feedstuffs produced from the same organic farm, which meet the nutritional needs of the animals at every stage of their lives. This section includes how the nutritional needs of organic animal are met and includes which additives and minerals are permitted in organic feeds and the conditions of their use.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.10.1 Meeting the nutritional needs of your livestock</b>            You must feed your livestock organic feed that meets their nutritional needs at all stages of their development.  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(d)(ii)</i></p>	<p>Routine monitoring of your animals is necessary to check that their nutritional demands are being met at each stage of the production cycle. You can use a range of measures to assess the nutritional status of your animals, for example, body condition, cleanliness and diarrhoea, skin and coat condition, body weight and mortality (for lambs). If you would like more information and support on monitoring the welfare of your animals see our <a href="#">Advisory Support</a> pages or contact Producer Support or the Certification Team.</p> <p>Young mammals must be fed sufficient colostrum and milk and only weaned after the minimum ages referred to in standard 3.10.09 and when they are taking in sufficient quantities of solid food.</p> <p>The welfare of your animals will be assessed at inspection and your inspector will use the welfare outcomes measures described above to determine whether you are meeting this standard.</p>
<p><b>3.10.2 Force feeding is prohibited</b>            You must not force feed your livestock. Fattening practices are allowed only if they are reversible at any stage of the rearing process.  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 20(5)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.10.3 Encouraging anaemia is prohibited</b>            The keeping of livestock in conditions, or on a diet, which may encourage anaemia is prohibited.</p>	<p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>

(EC) 889/2008 Art. 20(4)

### 3.10.4 Feeding organic and in-conversion feed


1. The diet of your organic and converting animals must be based on organic feed composed of feedingstuffs obtained primarily from your holding or from other organic holdings in the same region.
2. You may feed or graze your organic or converting livestock:
  - a) up to 100% in-conversion feed from your own holding and no more than 30% in-conversion feed, forage or grazing from another holding.
  - b) up to 20% of the total average amount of feed can be first year conversion perennial forage crops and protein crops, only if they are produced from your own holding. The land you wish to use in this way must not have been part of any organic holding in the last five years.
3. When both in-conversion feed and first year conversion feed are being used, the total combined percentage used must not exceed the percentages in point a).
4. These percentages must be based on the annual dry matter intake of feedstuffs of plant origin.

(EC) 834/2007 Art. 5(k); Art. 14(1)(d)(i)(ii)  
(EC) 889/2008 Art. 21

In conversion feed (as defined in standard 2.1.5a) is feed grown on land that had completed one year of conversion before the crop was harvested. This one year of conversion can include any period recognised retrospectively as per standard 2.1.3.

Since 100% in-conversion from your own holding is currently permitted under point 2. a), point 3. is effectively redundant.

Pig and poultry enterprises can use first year in-conversion land after 6 months if the conditions in standard 3.1.7 have been met.

 Feed records

### 3.10.5 Feeding herbivores

1. Rearing systems for herbivores must be based on maximum use of grazing pasturage according to the availability of pastures in the different periods of the year. You must ensure for your herbivore species that:
  - a) At least 60% of their daily diet on a dry matter basis consists of fresh or dried fodder, roughage or silage, except during the period each year when the animals are under transhumance, and
  - b) At least 60% of their total diet comes from your own holding, or if this is not possible, feed produced in cooperation with other organic farms in the same region.

(EC) 889/2008 Art. 19(1); Art. 20(2)

 Feed records



**3.10.6 Reducing the amount of forage is prohibited**  
 For herbivore species, at least 60% of their daily diet on a dry matter basis must consist of fresh or dried fodder, roughage or silage. This must not be reduced below 60%, even during the first few months of lactation.  
*Soil Association higher standard*

 Feed records

**Why?**

Roughage and forage is a critical part of a ruminant's diet and function. Low forage diets can have serious welfare and health implications. They are often associated with breeding strategies that produce very high-yielding dairy cows. Producing large quantities of milk can exceed the capacity of the animal's digestive system to process sufficient nutrients without a detrimental effect on overall health and wellbeing. This approach to feeding and breeding can lead to systems of dairy production in which cows experience excessive hunger, loss of body condition and increased risk of infertility.

**Standards**

**Guidance**


**3.10.7 Feeding pigs and poultry**  
 1. For your pigs and poultry, you must ensure that:  
 a) roughage, fresh or dried fodder or silage is added to their daily ration.  
 b) at least 20% of their total diet comes from your own holding. Where this is not possible, you may use feed produced in the same region in cooperation with other organic farms or feed business operators.  
*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 19(2); Art. 20(3)*

Roughage, fresh and dried fodder must be fed at all stages of production. When rearing poultry you can feed hay or alfalfa in hay nets. For more ideas on how to enrich chicken's diets with roughage see the [FeatherWel website](#).  
  
 When animals are on pasture and able to forage and graze, no additional forage or roughage needs to be provided.


 Feed records

**Guidance table on daily dry matter intakes (DMI)**

Lactating dairy cows		Growing beef cattle, beef suckler cows and dairy young stock	
Weight (kg):	Daily DMI (kg)	Weight (kg):	Daily DMI @ 2.5% of live weight (kg)
400	14.0	100	2.50
450	15.75	150	3.75
500	17.5	200	5.00
550	19.25	250	6.25
600	21.0	300	7.50
650	22.75	350	8.75
700	24.5	400	10.00
750	26.25	450	11.25
Daily DMI has been calculated as 3.5% of live weight		Daily DMI has been calculated as 2.5% of live weight	

Sheep and goats (all groups)		Pigs	
Weight (kg)	Daily DMI @ 2% of live weight (kg)	Class	Average daily DMI (kg)
10	0.25	Sow + six piglets	4.50
20	0.50	plus each extra piglet	0.40
30	0.75	Gilts	2.60
40	1.00	Weaners at nine weeks	1.00
50	1.25	Weaners at 25 weeks	2.65
60	1.50		
70	1.75		
80	2.00		
Daily DMI has been calculated as 2% of live weight			
Poultry	Daily DMI (kg)		
Laying chickens	0.118		
Table chickens	0.077		
Turkeys	0.138		
Ducks and geese	0.150		
Standards		Guidance	
<p><b>3.10.8 Use of non-organic protein for pigs and poultry</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If you cannot source 100% organic feeds that meet the nutritional needs of your animals, you may feed pigs and poultry up to 5% non-organic protein feed.</li> <li>2. This percentage must be calculated on an annual dry matter basis.</li> <li>3. At your inspection you must have records to demonstrate that you are unable to source an appropriate 100% organic or in-conversion ration and that you have not fed more than 5% non-organic protein feed.</li> <li>4. This exemption will be in place until 31<sup>st</sup> December 2022. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 22(2)(b)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 43</i></li> </ol>		<p>If you are using a feed that is certified as suitable for organic production and it contains some non-organic ingredients, the feed mill will already have demonstrated that organic ingredients are not available. If you are mixing or blending your own feeds then you must demonstrate that suitable organic ingredients are not available.</p> <p> Feed records</p>	

<p><b>3.10.9 Feeding young mammals</b></p> <p>1. Young mammals must be fed natural, organic milk, preferably maternal milk, for a minimum period of:</p> <p>a) 12 weeks for calves b) 45 days for lambs and kids c) 40 days for piglets.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(d)(vi)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 20(1)</i></p>	<p>Maternal milk is milk from the mother; natural milk is from the glands of a mammal. Natural milk can come from other species provided that it meets the nutritional and health needs of the species you are feeding it to. Milk powder is considered as natural milk as long as it only contains milk powder.</p> <p>Milk powder containing vegetable oil and milk replacers is not considered as natural milk and therefore must be regarded as a concentrate for feed calculations during the minimum periods set out in this standard.</p> <p>You should have a plan in place to provide an organic source of colostrum. In an emergency you may feed non-organic milk replacer to young mammals until they are 72 hours old. However, if you feed them non-organic milk replacer for any longer they will lose their organic status.</p> <p>Proper care of youngstock is critical for their long-term health and survival. If a newborn is unable to suckle a bottle, or consume the full amount of colostrum, then a stomach tube should be used. This is a skilled technique which requires training to ensure the correct placement of the tube. See how to safely tube a calf using the AHDB Colostrum Feeding video <a href="#">here</a> and guidance on tubing a lamb <a href="#">here</a>.</p>
<p><b>3.10.10 Feeding of waste milk to calves is restricted</b></p> <p>You must not feed your calves milk taken from dairy cows during the statutory withdrawal period for antibiotic treatments.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>The feeding of colostrum is excluded from this requirement. We recommend that you use stored colostrum where available, in preference to colostrum taken from cows during the statutory withdrawal period for antibiotic treatments.</p>
<p><b>Why?</b></p> <p>Milk produced by cows that have been treated with antibiotics may contain antimicrobial residues. During the withdrawal period for antibiotic treatments, milk has to be withdrawn from the human food chain and this waste milk is often fed to calves. This approach to feeding waste milk promotes the development of antibiotic-resistant bacteria in calves.</p>	
<p><b>Standards</b></p>	<p><b>Guidance</b></p>
<p><b>3.10.11 Catastrophic circumstances</b></p> <p>1. Your competent authority may authorise on a temporary basis the use of non-organic feed under catastrophic</p>	<p>The Certification Team can submit a request to your competent authority on your behalf. In GB, the competent authority will require the following information to consider your request:</p>

<p>circumstances when forage is lost or when restrictions are imposed, in particular as a result of:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>exceptional weather conditions</li> <li>infectious disease outbreaks</li> <li>contamination with toxic substances</li> <li>fire.</li> </ol> <p>2. Upon approval by the competent authority you must keep documentary evidence of the use of this exception.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 22(2)(f)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 47(c)</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The agricultural parish(es) in which your farm is located</li> <li>The quantity of forage you usually make and the scale of your current shortage</li> <li>The reason/s for the forage shortage (if it is due to bad weather please provide details such as a report from the Met Office)</li> <li>Ways in which you have tried to overcome the shortage - e.g. organic forage purchased, new land rented, stock numbers reduced</li> <li>Evidence to show that you have tried and failed to source organic forage, including the area in which you have been searching and for how long</li> <li>Details of your livestock numbers, the organic diet fed to each group of animals and how long the shortage is forecasted to last</li> <li>Details of the groups of stock to be fed non-organic forage and how many are in each group, e.g. dry cows, young stock, in-lactation animals</li> <li>Details of the period of time that you wish to feed non-organic forage. Please note derogations can be given for a maximum of 3 months at a time. If towards the end of the permitted period you need the permission to be extended, you will need to submit a new request</li> <li>For dairy cows, the competent authority will also need confirmation that you have contacted your milk buyer and the details of their response</li> </ul> <p>If the derogation request is due of the quality of the diet, the competent authority will also require information to show the nutritional value of the current diet and details as to why it is unsatisfactory.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"> Records of the use of this exception</p>
<p><b>3.10.12 Buying feed</b> When you use commercial, compounded or blended feeds they must be licensed by an organic certification body and comply with organic standards.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 1</i></p>	<p>If you are sourcing organic feed from a processor not certified to Soil Association standards you will need to ensure that it does not contain calcified seaweed, as set out in standard 3.10.15.</p>
<p><b>3.10.13 Use of additional products and substances in feed and feed supplements</b></p> <p>1. You may only use the products and substances in standard 3.10.14 below if they are necessary to maintain animal health, welfare and vitality and to contribute to an</p>	<p>You must be able to justify the use of additional feed products, supplements and substances. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>by forage or soil analysis show that your home grown feeds are deficient,</li> <li>with blood or tissue analysis, or details of previously identified deficiencies in your stock,</li> </ul>

appropriate diet which fulfils the physiological and behavioural needs of your animals, or if it is impossible to produce or preserve feed without them. Their use is subject to the specific conditions in the table.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(d)(ii)(iv); Art. 16(2)(e)*

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 22*

2. The products in the table below may only be used if they are authorised for your intended use in your country.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 16(1)*

- referencing a known species specific nutritional need that cannot be met through feeding organic feed materials
- where a positive welfare outcome will result from the inclusion of the **additional feed product in the livestock's ration**

The products you use should target the nutritional needs as closely as possible and must be used in compliance with the conditions set in the table below.

Mineral licks must be free from additives and ingredients not permitted in these standards. Contact the Certification Team for more information on using mineral and feed blocks.

Boluses are acceptable if the components are listed in 3.10.14 with the exclusion of the metal ballast.

 Records of any feed supplements used

Your livestock management plan should include details of any additional feed products and supplements fed along with the reason for their use.

All products must also be authorised under [Regulation \(EC\) 1831/2003](#), with the exception of:

- organic feed materials of animal origin
- non-organic feed materials of plant or animal origin, or fermentation (by-products) from micro-organisms, the cells of which have been inactivated or killed
- feed materials of mineral origin
- products from sustainable fisheries
- non-organic spices, herbs and molasses

## Standards

### 3.10.14 Products and substances permitted for use in livestock feed

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 16(1)(c)(d)*

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 22; Annex V; Annex VI*

## Feed Material

Product or substance		Conditions of use
Organic feed materials of animal origin		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There are restrictions on what animal by-products you can feed to different animal species. UK guidance is available <a href="#">here</a></li> </ul>
Non-organic feed materials of plant or animal origin, or fermentation (by-products) from micro-organisms, the cells of which have been inactivated or killed: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</li> <li>Saccharomyces carlsbergensis</li> </ol>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>must be produced or prepared without chemical solvents; and</li> <li>only used as part of the non-organic feed allowance in compliance with standards 3.10.8 and 3.10.11.</li> </ul>
<b>Minerals</b>		
Product or substance		Conditions of use
Sodium	Sea salt Coarse rock salt Sodium chloride Sodium bicarbonate Sodium carbonate Sodium sulphate	
Potassium	Potassium chloride	
Calcium	Calcareous marine shells Calcium gluconate Calcium carbonate	
Phosphorus	Defluorinated monocalciumphosphate Defluorinated dicalciumphosphate Monosodium phosphate Calcium magnesium phosphate Calcium sodium phosphate Monosodium phosphate	
Magnesium	Magnesium oxide (anhydrous magnesia) Magnesium sulphate Magnesium chloride Magnesium carbonate Magnesium phosphate	
<b>Preservatives</b>		
Functional Group	Product or substance	Conditions of use
E 200	Sorbic acid	

E 236	Formic acid	
E 237	Sodium formate	
E 260	Acetic acid	
E 270	Lactic acid	
E 280	Propionic acid	
E 330	Citric acid	
<b>Antioxidants</b>		
<b>ID no. or Functional Group</b>	<b>Product or substance</b>	<b>Conditions of use</b>
1b306(i)	Tocopherol extracts from vegetable oils	
1b306(ii)	Tocopherol-rich extracts from vegetable oils (delta rich)	
<b>Binders and anti-caking agents</b>		
<b>ID no. or Functional Group</b>	<b>Product or substance</b>	<b>Conditions of use</b>
E412	Guar gum	
E 535	Sodium ferrocyanide	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Maximum dose rate of 20 mg/kg NaCl calculated as ferrocyanide anion</li> </ul>
E 551b	Colloidal silica	
E 551c	Kieselguhr (diatomaceous earth, purified)	
1m558i	Bentonite	
E 559	Kaolinitic clays, free of asbestos	
E 560	Natural mixtures of stearites and chlorite	
E 561	Vermiculite	
E 562	Sepiolite	
E 566	Natrolite-Phonolite	
1g568	Clinoptilolite of sedimentary origin	
E 599	Perlite	
<b>Silage additives</b>		
<b>ID no.</b>	<b>Product or substance</b>	<b>Conditions of use</b>
1k	Enzymes and micro-organisms	Use restricted to production of silage when weather conditions do not allow for adequate fermentation
1k237	Sodium formate	
1k280	Propionic acid	
1k281	Sodium propionate	

Sensory additives		
ID no.	Product or substance	Conditions of use
2b	Flavouring compounds	Only extracts from agricultural products
	Castanea sativa Mill.: Chestnut extract	
Nutritional additives		
ID no.	Product or substance	Conditions of use
3a	Vitamins and provitamins	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Only if derived from agricultural products, or</li> <li>• If synthetic vitamins are used only those identical to vitamins derived from agricultural products may be used for monogastric and aquaculture animals</li> </ul> <p>Only synthetic vitamins A, D and E if identical to vitamins derived from agricultural products may be used for ruminants. Their use is subject to approval by the Member State. If you want to make use of this provision, you must justify why you need to use these vitamins. In GB this must be approved by the competent authority.</p>
3a920	Betaine anhydrous	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Only for monogastric animals.</li> <li>• Only from natural origin and when available from organic origin.</li> </ul> <p><b>Guidance</b> There is a risk of production from GM beet and you must be able to demonstrate that betaine anhydrous is not from a GM source as per standard 1.11.2.</p>
Trace elements		
ID no. or Functional Group	Product or substance	Conditions of use
E1 Iron		
3b101	Iron(II) carbonate (siderite)	
3b103	Iron(II) sulphate monohydrate	
3b104	Iron(II) sulphate heptahydrate	
3b201	Potassium iodide	
3b202	Calcium iodate, anhydrous	



3b203	Coated granulated calcium iodate anhydrous	
3b301	Cobalt(II) acetate tetrahydrate	
3b302	Cobalt(II) carbonate	
3b303	Cobalt(II) carbonate hydroxide (2:3) monohydrate	
3b304	Coated granulated cobalt(II) carbonate	
3b305	Cobalt(II) sulphate heptahydrate	
3b402	Copper(II) carbonate dihydroxy monohydrate	
3b404	Copper (II) oxide	
3b405	Copper (II) sulphate, pentahydrate	
3b409	Dicopper chloride trihydroxide (TBCC)	
3b502	Manganese (II) oxide	
3b503	manganous sulfate, monohydrate	
3b603	zinc oxide	
3b604	zinc sulphate heptahydrate	
3b605	Zinc sulphate monohydrate	
3b609	Zinc chloride hydroxide monohydrate (TBZC)	
3b701	Sodium molybdate dihydrate	
3b801	Sodium selenite	
	Selenised yeast inactivated	

3b8.10, 3b8.11, 3b8.12, 3b813 and 3b817		
<b>Zotechnical additives</b>		
<b>ID no. or Functional Group</b>	<b>Product or substance</b>	<b>Conditions of use</b>
4a, 4b, 4c and 4d	Enzymes and micro-organisms in the category of "Zotechnical additives"	
<b>Product or substance</b>		<b>Conditions of use</b>
Products from sustainable fisheries,		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>only when they are produced without chemical solvents</li> <li>their use is restricted to non-herbivores</li> <li>the use of fish protein hydrolysate is restricted solely to young animals</li> </ul>
		<b>Guidance</b>
		The source must be independently certified as sustainable, such as by the Marine Stewardship Council.
Non-organic spices, herbs and molasses provided that:		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>only when organic is not available</li> <li>must be produced or prepared without chemical solvents, and</li> <li>use is limited to 1% of the feed ration of a given species calculated as a percentage of the dry matter of feed from agricultural origin</li> </ul>
		<b>Guidance</b>
		If you use non-organic spices, herbs or molasses you must demonstrate that the organic form is not available.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.10.15 Use of calcified seaweed is prohibited</b>            You must not use calcified seaweed, lithothamne or maerl when extracted from the sea in livestock feeds.  <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Why?</b></p> <p>Calcified seaweed, lithothamne and maerl refer to a group of coralline, primarily of the species <i>Phymatolithon calcareum</i> and <i>Lithothamnion corallioides</i>. Calcified seaweed beds are relatively scarce and are important habitats which hold impressive levels of biodiversity, harboring many rare and commercially valuable species. Owing to their extremely slow growth rate, calcified seaweed beds are very fragile and cannot sustain even limited extraction without deterioration.</p> <p>Commercial extraction from the sea has already led to the destruction of several beds in Europe and current levels of protection provided are unlikely to prevent further destruction and deterioration. We therefore prohibit the use of calcified seaweed when extracted from the sea in Soil Association organic standards.</p>	
Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.10.16 Synthetic amino-acids</b>            You must not use synthetic amino-acids.  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(d)(v)</i></p>	

3.11 Transporting and handling your animals	
<p><b>What is this chapter about?</b>            This section contains standards on transporting and handling organic animals.</p>	
Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.11.1 Transport and handling</b>            1. You must minimise any stress and suffering during handling and transport.  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(viii)</i></p>	<p>The welfare of animals in transport is the responsibility of both those sending and receiving the livestock. Animal transport needs to be planned and managed to ensure livestock are not caused unnecessary distress or discomfort. The transport and handling of livestock needs to be kept to a minimum.</p> <p>Transporting ill or injured animals is likely to cause unnecessary stress and suffering. You should avoid transporting these animals where possible.</p>

2. The duration of transport must be minimised.  
*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(vii)*

3. You must not tranquilise any of your livestock before or during transport.  
*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 18(4)*

Transporting very young and heavily pregnant animals is likely to cause unnecessary stress. To minimise stress, avoid transporting the following animals:

- Cattle over 6 months in-calf (65% of gestation period)
- Ewes over 3 months in-lamb (65% of gestation period)
- Calves under one-month old, or under 12 weeks old without dams
- Lambs and kids under 45 days old without ewes or nannies



**Unnecessary long distance travel is prohibited**

Journey times must be kept to a minimum. Any long journeys, defined as being over 8 hours as calculated from first animal loaded to last unloaded, must be justified.



The export or other unnecessary long distance transport of organic animals is not compliant with this standard. For example, you cannot transport organic animals long distances for slaughter when a suitable slaughter facility is available closer to your farm.

Aim to source and sell your organic animals locally. On our website you can advertise and view organic certified [stock](#) and local certified [abattoirs](#). If there are no organically certified abattoirs in your area, you can add a local abattoir to your licence through our local abattoir scheme.

If you sell livestock either through a market or directly, do everything you can to ensure that they are not sent for export out of the UK and/or are then raised in intensive systems. We are particularly concerned about the long distance transport and sale of calves into continental-style veal systems which have been shown to deliver poor animal welfare.



**Livestock markets**

To minimise stress and handling of livestock you should aim to sell or source livestock directly with farmers rather than through a livestock market. If you have no option but to use a livestock market, the handling, care and welfare of the livestock is the responsibility of the livestock owner. The livestock owner is responsible for ensuring organic standards are met, for example by ensuring that animals are fed organic feed while at market.


	<p> The welfare of animals at transport is protected by law. Information on the legal requirements in GB can be found <a href="#">here</a>.</p> <p>The main legislation that governs animal welfare at shows and markets includes the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Animal Welfare Act 2006</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Welfare of Animals at Markets Order 1990</a> (WAMO)</li> <li>• <a href="#">Welfare of Animals at Markets (Amendment) Order 1993</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Welfare of Horses at Markets (and Other Places of Sale) Order 1990</a> (WHAMOPSO)</li> <li>• <a href="#">Welfare of Animals (Transport) (England) Order 2006</a></li> </ul> <p>The owners and keepers of livestock, including persons with temporary responsibility, such as market operators are responsible for safeguarding animal welfare.</p> <p> WAMO is enforced by local authorities who identify problems at markets and Animal and Plant Health Agency officials who regularly visit and inspect markets.</p>
<p><b>3.11.2 Use of electric goads is prohibited</b>  Loading and unloading animals must be carried out without the use of any type of electrical stimulation to coerce the animals.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 18(4)</i></p>	<p>Loading and unloading is the most common circumstance where electrical stimulation is used to coerce animals. In GB the competent authority has confirmed that the use of electric stimulation at any stage of organic production is prohibited.</p>

## 3.12 Standards for poultry


**What is this chapter about?**  
 This section contains all the poultry specific standards for organic poultry production that you must comply with together with the general livestock standards.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.12.1 Keeping poultry in cages is prohibited</b>                      You must <b>not</b> keep poultry in cages.                      (EC) 889/2008 Art. 12(1)</p>	<p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>
<p><b>3.12.2 Number of birds permitted in each house</b>                      Each poultry house must not contain more than:                      a) 3,000 birds for laying chickens                      (EC) 889/2008 Art. 12(3)(e)                      b) 1,000 birds for other poultry species.                      Soil Association higher standard</p>	<p>Under this definition 'laying <b>chickens</b>' means laying hens.                      Other poultry species includes all other laying birds and all table birds.</p> <p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>

**Why?**  
 Flock size is limited to help ensure consistently high levels of animal welfare and encourage use of the range.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.12.3 Maximum permitted area for meat birds</b>                      The total usable area of poultry houses for meat production on any single unit must not exceed 1,600 m<sup>2</sup>.                      (EC) 889/2008 Art. 12(3)(f)</p>	<p>The useable area includes all covered areas where the animals have full access 24 hours a day.</p>
<p><b>3.12.4 Floor area for poultry</b>                      At least 50% of the floor area of your poultry housing must be solid, that is, not of slatted or grid construction.                      Soil Association higher standard</p>	<p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>

**Why?**  
 Giving poultry access to dry, loose litter provides them with a vital material for foraging and dust bathing, allowing them to express these natural behaviours. This reduces the risk of welfare problems developing. Feather pecking is thought to be a redirected foraging or ground-pecking behaviour which can arise when birds do not have the opportunity to express these natural behaviours. This standard requires that Soil Association farmers provide a larger litter area. This will reduce the effect of stocking density on the litter and increase the likelihood that birds will have access to good quality litter all year round.

Standards	Guidance		
<p><b>3.12.5 Housing requirements for all poultry species</b>            The buildings for all poultry species must meet the following conditions:  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 10(4); Art. 12(3)(c); Annex III</i></p>	<p>When calculating the internal stocking rate you must exclude the area taken up by nest boxes.</p> <p>If you move batches between housing systems, you must make every effort to ensure that both systems are similar to minimise stress on the birds.</p> <p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>		

Indoor area (net area available to animals)			
	Perch	Nest	No animals/m <sup>2</sup>
Laying hens	18 cm/bird	7 birds per individual nest box, or  120cm <sup>2</sup> per bird in communal nests	6
Table chickens			In fixed housing: 10, with a maximum of 21 kg liveweight/m <sup>2</sup>
			In mobile housing*: 16, with a maximum of 30 kg liveweight/m <sup>2</sup>


Indoor area (net area available to animals)			
Turkeys	Elevated perches or surfaces must be provided. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i>		In fixed housing: 10, with a maximum of 21 kg liveweight/m <sup>2</sup> In mobile housing*: 16, with a maximum of 30 kg liveweight/m <sup>2</sup>
Ducks	40 cm/bird (only for Muscovy ducks) <i>Soil Association higher standard</i>		In fixed housing: 10, with a maximum of 21 kg liveweight/m <sup>2</sup> In mobile housing*: 16, with a maximum of 30 kg liveweight/m <sup>2</sup>
Geese			In fixed housing: 10, with a maximum of 21 kg liveweight/m <sup>2</sup> In mobile housing*: 16, with a maximum of 30 kg liveweight/m <sup>2</sup>
Guinea fowl	20 cm/bird		In fixed housing:

			10, with a maximum of 21 kg liveweight/m <sup>2</sup>
			In mobile housing*: 16, with a maximum of 30 kg liveweight/m <sup>2</sup>

\*only in mobile housing not exceeding 150m<sup>2</sup> floor space

### Why?

Wild turkeys roost in trees at night and domestic turkeys retain this strong instinct to perch. Similarly, Muscovy ducks, unlike other domestic ducks, have not descended from the wild mallard and have long claws which allow them to perch and they will roost in trees in the wild. It is therefore important to provide these species with perches to give them the opportunity to exhibit their behavioural needs.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.12.6 Aerial perches</b> The perch space you provide must be aerial perch space. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p> <p>The following is species-specific guidance.</p> <p><b>Laying hens</b> The following provisions are not included as perch space:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• raised or integrated slats</li> <li>• raised or integrated bars on flooring.</li> </ul> <p>In the UK and the EU, the mounting of perches above the litter is prohibited under the Council Directive <i>No 1999/74/EC</i>. For laying hens this regulation also requires that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• horizontal distance between aerial perches is at least 30 cm</li> <li>• distance from walls to perches is at least 20 cm</li> <li>• vertical distance between perches must be at least 45 cm</li> </ul> <p>The vertical distance from the floor to the perch should also be at least 40 cm, to help prevent vent pecking.</p> <p><b>Table chickens</b> There is strong scientific evidence to suggest that table chickens are highly motivated to perch. Perch provision can also reduce the severity or incidence of contact dermatitis, such as foot pad dermatitis and hockburn. Where possible you should provide perches. Table chickens prefer grasping structures, such as</p>





	<p>bar perches. Raised platforms may also fulfil perching requirements and enable heavier birds to elevate themselves off the ground.</p> <p>We are conducting trials to develop perching standards for broilers. If you would like to take part in the trials please contact a member of the Standards Team.</p> <p><b>Turkeys</b> In addition to bar perches or other grasping structures, elevated surfaces, such as bales or platforms may be counted as perch provision.</p> <p>We are conducting trials to further develop perching standards for turkeys. If you would like to take part in the trials please contact a member of the Standards Team.</p>
--	--

### Why?

Most species have a behavioural motivation to perch. Providing aerial perches allows birds to exhibit a greater range of natural behaviours, reducing the risk of feather pecking and enabling birds to escape from any ground level harassment from other birds.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.12.7 Providing litter</b> The solid floor area must be covered with a litter material such as straw, wood shavings, sand or turf. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 12(3)(a)</i></p>	<p>We will assess at inspection whether your litter is suitable and well managed for example whether it is dry and friable.</p>
<p><b>3.12.8 Poultry house hygiene</b> For poultry houses for laying hens, a sufficiently large part of the floor area must be available for the collection of bird droppings. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 12(3)(b)</i></p>	<p>The system you have in place for the collection of droppings must ensure that there is not a build-up of droppings in the area to which poultry have access.</p>


Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.12.9 Artificial light</b></p> <p>1. You may use artificial light to prolong the day length up to 16 hours. You must give your poultry a continuous nocturnal rest period of at least 8 hours. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 12(4)</i></p> <p>2. If you are not using natural dusk, you must dim the light for an adequate amount of time before it is turned off or use a stepped lighting programme to guide the birds to the perches. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>A period of at least 10 minutes to dim the lights is recommended for laying hens and at least 30 minutes for table chickens.</p> <p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>
<p><i>Why?</i></p> <p>Poultry use a reduction in light intensity as a signal for night roosting. Gradually dimming the lights allows birds to anticipate changes in light which may prevent stress. In particular, it allows laying hens to find a suitable perch for the night without causing injury. It has been shown to stimulate feeding behaviour in broilers and laying hens which may prevent hunger during the night.</p>	
Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.12.10 Feed and water provision</b></p> <p>Your livestock must always have easy access to feed and water. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(ii)</i></p>	<p>For animals fed <i>ad lib</i> you must feed them in a way that minimises bullying. This can include providing alternative sources of food on the range, such as suitable vegetation to encourage foraging. For animals which are not given continuous access to feed, you must provide adequate feed space to ensure that all animals can feed at the same time and to avoid competition and aggression. Carefully consider the height of drinkers to ensure all livestock can access the drinking point. The following is a guide to providing adequate feeding space and water supply for different poultry species:</p> <p><b>Layers</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Linear feeder space: 10 cm/bird*</li> <li>• Circular feeder space: 4 cm/bird*</li> <li>• Bell drinkers: 1 cm/bird*</li> <li>• Nipple drinkers: one per 10 birds</li> <li>• Drinking troughs: 2.5 cm /bird*</li> </ul> <p><b>Table birds</b></p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• linear feeder space: 2.5cm/bird</li> <li>• circular feeder space: 33cm per 65 birds</li> <li>• bell drinkers: one per 100 birds</li> <li>• nipple drinkers: one per 10 birds</li> <li>• cup drinkers: one per 28 birds</li> </ul> <p><b>Layers and table birds</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• linear drinker space: 2.5cm/bird</li> <li>• circular drinker space: 1cm/bird</li> </ul> <p>* These are the minimum number of feeders and drinkers required by the Council Directive 1999/74/EC (adopted by the UK) laying down minimum standards for the protection of laying hens.</p>
<p><b>3.12.11 Access to the outdoor range</b></p> <p>1. Poultry must be given access to an outdoor range from as early an age as practically possible. This means whenever physiological and weather conditions allow, except in the case of temporary restrictions or obligations imposed by competent authorities.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(iii)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 14(5)</i></p>	<p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p> <p>The age at which your birds can go outside will depend on the time of year and the weather. Access to the range must be given by the following ages:</p> <p><b>Laying poultry</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 10 weeks for geese</li> <li>• 10 weeks for turkeys</li> </ul>

<p>2. Access must be given, at the latest, by the ages or for the minimum duration stated in the guidance. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 12 weeks for laying hens and other species</li> <li>• The second day after placement into the laying shed for laying hens</li> </ul> <p><b>Table poultry</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 10 weeks for geese or two thirds of their life, whichever is earlier</li> <li>• 10 weeks for turkeys or two thirds of their life, whichever is earlier</li> <li>• Two thirds of their life for other species</li> </ul> <p>Beyond these ages we would only expect extreme weather conditions to prevent outdoor access.</p> <p>When you give your poultry access to a range, you may provide a smaller enclosed range to reduce predation risk up until these age limits.</p>
--	--

*Why?*

Giving poultry early access to the range encourages birds to use the range more. The range provides birds with plenty of opportunities to express natural behaviours, such as ground pecking and foraging. Improved range use has been shown to decrease the risk of injurious feather pecking.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.12.12 Stocking density on the range</b> The stocking densities on the range for different poultry species are set out in this table. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Annex III</i></p>	<p>To be regarded as mobile housing, the houses must be moved between flocks of birds onto a fresh range. The fresh range must provide the poultry access to a different area than was provided for the previous flock.</p> <p>Within the life of a flock you may restrict access to parts of the range to prevent poaching and allow vegetation to recover. Poultry must always have access to at least two thirds of the total range area at any one time. Access may only be restricted for up to a third of the total length of time that poultry have access to the range.</p> <p>Open water can be included as part of the range space provision for waterfowl.</p> <p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>

	Range size available within a rotation	
Species	Static/fixed housing	Mobile housing
Laying hens	1,000 birds/ha (1 bird/10 m <sup>2</sup> ) over the life of the flock <i>Soil Association higher standard</i>	1,000 birds/ha (1 bird/10 m <sup>2</sup> ) over the life of the flock <i>Soil Association higher standard</i>
Table chickens	2,500 birds/ha (1 bird/4 m <sup>2</sup> )	4,000 birds/ha (1 bird/2.5 m <sup>2</sup> )
Ducks	2,222 birds/ha (1 bird/4.5 m <sup>2</sup> )	2,222 birds/ha (1 bird/4.5 m <sup>2</sup> ) <i>Soil Association higher standard</i>
Guinea fowl	2,500 birds/ha (1 bird/4 m <sup>2</sup> )	2,500 birds/ha (1 bird/4 m <sup>2</sup> ) <i>Soil Association higher standard</i>
Turkeys	1,000 birds/ha (1 bird/10 m <sup>2</sup> ) at any one time	1,000 birds/ha (1 bird/10 m <sup>2</sup> ) at any one time <i>Soil Association higher standard</i>
Geese	666 birds/ha (1 bird/15 m <sup>2</sup> ) at any one time	666 birds/ha (1 bird/15 m <sup>2</sup> ) at any one time <i>Soil Association higher standard</i>


All subject to ensuring that 170kg of N/ha/year is not exceeded.

### Why?

Soil Association standards set lower outdoor stocking densities for turkeys and geese, ducks and guinea fowl in mobile housing, and for laying hens in all types of housing, than those permitted under the GB Organic Regulation. These poultry species range extensively and are kept on ranges for sustained periods of time. Requiring a lower stocking rate helps prevent damage to the range, ensuring the birds have access to a stimulating environment where they can express their natural behaviours.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.12.13 Easy access to the outside</b> Your poultry house must allow all of the birds easy access to the outdoor range. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 12(3)(g)</i></p>	<p>The following may prevent birds from having easy access to the outdoor range:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• popholes which have a large step up</li> <li>• popholes which do not give the hens an easy view of the range</li> <li>• obstructions in front, or outside of, the popholes</li> <li>• poor provision of shade and shelter close to the housing and across the range.</li> </ul>
<p><b>3.12.14 Pop-hole size</b> Poultry houses must have pop-holes of a size adequate for the birds, and these pop-holes must have a combined length of at least 4m per 100m<sup>2</sup> area of the house available to the birds. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 12(3)(d)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.12.15 Range management</b> 1. You must design and manage your poultry range to ensure that the range:</p>	<p>You must be able to demonstrate how you will maintain vegetation cover on your range at your desired outdoor stocking density. This will need to include how you manage the area outside the pop-holes.</p>

<p>a) is mainly covered with vegetation  b) provides protective shelter at all times  c) permits poultry easy access to adequate numbers of drinking and feeding troughs.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 14(6)</i></p>	<p>As part of your range management you may rotate your range during the life of the flock. You must always give your poultry access to at least two thirds of the total range area at any one time. Access may only be restricted for up to a third of the total length of time that poultry have access to the range.</p> <p>Putting down stones, slats or woodchip outside of pop-holes can help you manage poaching. For more information on range management and methods to reduce poaching see the FeatherWel <a href="#">website</a>.</p> <p>Drinkers and feeders do not have to be provided outside but must be easily accessible to birds out on the range.</p>
<p><b>3.12.16 Range quality and cover</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The range must be of a suitable design and actively managed to encourage birds outside and to promote full and extensive use of the range. The minimum outdoor space required for the flock must be available within the distances set out in the guidance below.</li> <li>2. A variety of shelter and natural cover must be provided on the range and distributed appropriately to promote full range use.</li> <li>3. Your range of shelters must provide adequate protection from the inclement weather and overhead predators.</li> <li>4. Natural cover must be provided at an area equal to at least 5% of the area available to your poultry. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) If the natural cover does not provide cover all year round or if the natural cover is immature, you must provide supplementary cover during the period in which sufficient cover is not provided.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. At least one area of natural cover or shelter must be available within 20m of the pop-holes.</li> <li>6. Points 2 -5 above apply for laying chickens, meat chickens, turkeys and guinea fowl. They do not apply to geese and ducks.</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Acceptable forms of shelter can include trailers. For more information and ideas on appropriate shelters see the FeatherWel <a href="#">website</a>.</p> <p>The distance between shelters or natural cover should be no more than 20 metres to promote full range use. For trees this can be calculated from the outer most branch of a tree. New trees should be planted no more than 30 metres apart, trunk to trunk.</p> <p>Natural cover may include trees, perennial shrubs, bushes, hedgerows, or cover crops, such as artichokes, kale, millet, fodder rape and corn. To be included as part of the 5% requirement, natural cover must be accessible to the poultry. Long grass does not count towards your natural cover provision because it does not encourage birds to range and can cause harm if eaten.</p> <p>Not all natural cover has to provide actual overhead protection, but it must encourage range use by providing refuge for the birds. For example, it can include brushings from trees or hedges.</p> <p>If you use deciduous trees or other forms of natural cover that only provide shelter for part of the year, you must provide supplementary cover or shelter. The supplementary shelter can be artificial, for example arcs, or natural, for example piles of brushings. The supplementary cover must make up the 5% natural cover requirement when the natural cover is not providing shelter.</p>



	<p>Narrow ranges which require birds to walk long distances to access a portion of the range do not encourage good use of the range. The minimum outdoor space required for the flock must be available within the following distance from the house:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 100m for layers, turkeys, geese and guinea fowl</li> <li>• 50m for table chickens and ducks</li> </ul> <p>Any additional space provided on the range may extend further than this limit and does not need to be included when calculating your 5% natural cover requirement. If geese or ducks are walked out to pasture, narrow paddocks or fields may be appropriate.</p> <p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>
--	---

### Why?

The provision of natural shelter, particularly trees, is an effective method to encourage birds to range and range further, which in turn will lead to animal welfare and environmental benefits. Shelter helps protect poultry from adverse weather conditions and predators, as well as providing birds with more choice and variation in their environment.

Tree cover in particular can also provide other environmental benefits. These include soil stabilisation, reduced rainwater runoff and nutrient leaching, carbon sequestration, help with capturing ammonia emissions and providing buffers for sensitive habitats. Water infiltration is 60 times more effective on pasture with trees compared to pasture without trees, which helps prevent the range from becoming waterlogged.


Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.12.17 Resting the range for laying poultry</b></p> <p>1. For laying poultry the range must be rested for sufficient time to allow vegetation to grow back. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 23(5)</i></p>	<p>It is your responsibility to ensure that the range is rested for sufficient time to allow vegetation to regrow and to manage disease risk. You must be able to justify your resting periods and explain how you will maintain vegetation cover and disease risk on your range at your desired outdoor stocking density. The resting periods may need to be extended to allow vegetation to recover and to control disease risk.</p> <p>Grass and vegetation cover on the range may be used as an indicator to assess whether sufficient time has been left between batches of poultry. Putting down stones, slats or woodchip outside the pop-holes can help you manage poaching.</p>
<p>2. This must be no less than nine months between each flock. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p>3. You must keep records to demonstrate that this resting period has been applied. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 23(5)</i></p>	
<p>4. These requirements do not apply if your poultry are:</p> <p>a) not reared in batches</p>	

<p>b) are not kept in runs, and c) are free to roam throughout the day. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 23(5)</i></p>	<p> Records of the applied resting period</p> <p>You may restrict access to part of the range within the life of a flock to help you manage vegetation cover. Your poultry must always have access to at least two thirds of the total range area at any one time. Access may only be restricted for up to a third of the total length of time that poultry have access to the range.</p> <p> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p>
---	---

*Why?*

Vegetation cover on the range is important as it encourages birds outside giving them plenty of opportunities to perform natural behaviours such as ground pecking and foraging. Muddy areas on the range can present health and welfare risks and can lead to poor litter quality from birds tracking mud into the house.

Soil Association standards require a longer resting period for laying poultry because they live for longer and range more widely than table birds, which puts more pressure on the range in terms of vegetation depletion and manure deposition. Giving a nine month fallow period allows vegetation to fully recover between flocks, using up the excess nutrients in the soil and also helps break disease cycles.

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.12.18 Resting the range for table poultry</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. For table poultry the range must be rested for sufficient time to allow vegetation to grow back.</li> <li>2. This must be no less than two months per year.</li> <li>3. You must keep records to demonstrate what resting period has been applied.</li> <li>4. These requirements do not apply if your poultry are:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) not reared in batches</li> <li>b) are not kept in runs, and</li> <li>c) are free to roam throughout the day. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 23(5)</i></li> </ol> </li> </ol>	<p>It is your responsibility to ensure that the range is rested for sufficient time to allow vegetation to regrow and to manage disease risk. You must be able to justify your resting periods and explain how you will maintain vegetation cover and disease risk on your range at your desired outdoor stocking density. The resting periods may need to be extended to allow vegetation to recover and to control disease risk.</p> <p>Grass and vegetation cover on the range may be used as an indicator to assess whether sufficient time has been left between batches of poultry. Putting down stones, slats or woodchip outside the pop-holes can help you manage poaching.</p> <p> Records of the applied resting period</p> <p>You may restrict access to part of the range within the life of a flock to help you manage vegetation cover. Your poultry must always have access to at least two</p>



	<p>thirds of the total range area at any one time. Access may only be restricted for up to a third of the total length of time that poultry have access to the range.</p>
<p><b>3.12.19 Keeping poultry indoors due to restrictions</b>  Where poultry are kept indoors due to restrictions or obligations imposed on the basis of Community legislation, they must have permanent access to sufficient quantities of roughage and suitable material to meet their ethological needs.  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 14(7)</i></p>	<p>Suitable material includes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• straw/hay bales</li> <li>• alfalfa bales/blocks</li> <li>• vegetables</li> <li>• other vegetation, such as foliage.</li> </ul> <p>At least two enrichments per 500 hens.</p> <p><b>I</b> For more information on enrichment materials see the <a href="#">Featherwel website</a>.</p>
<p><b>3.12.20 Disease prevention</b>  Buildings must be emptied of livestock between each batch of poultry reared. The buildings and fittings must be cleaned and disinfected during this time.  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 23(5)</i></p>	<p>Cleaning and disinfecting procedures need to ensure there is no dirt, dust, debris, or litter present when washing is complete.</p> <p>The health and performance of the next flock can indicate that appropriate resting, cleaning and disinfecting procedures are in place. Problems with red mite and bacterial diseases such as <i>E.coli</i> or <i>Mycoplasma</i> can be a result of poor hygiene, inadequate cleaning of buildings and feed/drinker lines between flocks.</p>
<p><b>3.12.21 Access to water for waterfowl</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To meet their species-specific needs and welfare requirements, water fowl must have access to a stream, pond, lake or pool, whenever weather and hygiene conditions allow.</li> <li>2. You must maintain and manage the water to prevent the build-up of disease.</li> </ol> <p><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 12(2); Art. 23(4)</i></p>	<p><b>S</b> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p> <p>To meet their species-specific needs, ducks need full body access to water. If you are unable to provide ducks with full body access to water, for example during extreme weather, you should still give them access to water for preening.</p> <p>Ducks use different depths of water to perform different behaviours and you should provide a varying water depth to meet their behavioural needs.</p>
<p><b>3.12.22 Enrichment in the house*</b>  You must provide suitable enrichment material in your poultry house.  <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p><b>S</b> A sourcing requirement applies for SA processors.</p> <p>To provide suitable enrichment for flocks of more than 500 birds you must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Provide enough enrichment materials across the whole house to enable</li> </ul>

<p>*This Standard comes into effect from February 2022</p>	<p>all birds to access it. This must be no less than two items per 500 birds but you may find that more are required to meet the needs of your flock.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Change enrichment items frequently to maintain the birds' interest.</li> <li>- Ensure that any enrichment materials which contain feed materials are organic.</li> <li>- Provide destructible enrichment, including forage, e.g. lucerne bales, bagged chopped alfalfa, hanging vegetables or cardboard egg trays.</li> </ul> <p>It is recommended that flocks of 500 birds or less are also provided with this type of enrichment. You will be expected to use enrichment as a management tool to address issues in the flock as necessary.</p> <p><b>Enrichment items can include pipe or barrel 'tunnels', hanging items, pecking materials and innovative feeders.</b> For more information on enrichment materials see the <a href="#">Featherwel website</a></p>
<p><b>3.12.23 Minimum slaughter ages for poultry</b>  To prevent the use of intensive rearing methods, poultry shall either be reared until they reach a minimum age or else must come from slow-growing poultry strains. Where slow growing poultry strains are not used the following minimum age at slaughter must be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) 81 days for chickens</li> <li>b) 49 days for Peking ducks</li> <li>c) 70 days for female Muscovy ducks</li> <li>d) 84 days for male Muscovy ducks</li> <li>e) 92 days for Mallard ducks</li> <li>f) 94 days for guinea fowl</li> <li>g) 140 days for male turkeys and roasting geese</li> <li>h) 100 days for female turkeys</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 12(5)</i></p>	<p>In GB, Defra regards <b>strains</b> as 'slow growing' under organic management if the live weight gain per day does not exceed 45g or in the case of turkeys, 55g per day, averaged over the life of the bird.</p> <p>You may use certain poultry strains with intermediate growth rates.</p> <p>For permitted breeds and strains of chicken, see standard 3.2.1</p>

### 3.13 Additional standards for pullet rearing

#### What is this chapter about?

The GB Organic Regulation states that organic systems should aim to complete the production cycles of livestock with organically reared animals and that organic livestock products should come from animals that have been raised on organic holdings since birth or hatching ((EC) 834/2007 Art. 5 (i)). However, it does not yet contain detailed rules for organic pullet rearing. In their absence, the following standards have been adapted from EU Regulation 834/2007 and EU Regulation 889/2008 by applying *mutatis mutandis* to provide a certification framework for the production of organic pullets. You must also comply with the applicable standards in:

- Chapter 1 'General standards for farming and growing'
- Chapter 2 'Standards for organic land and crops'
- Chapter 3 'Standards for organic livestock production'

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.13.1 Origin of stock</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. You must use organic day old chicks from organically managed breeding flocks if they are available.</li> <li>2. If organic chicks are not available you may use non-organic chicks but you must manage them to full organic standards from less than three days old.</li> <li>3. You must have prior authorisation from your competent authority before bringing in any non-organic poultry. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(a)(i)(ii)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 42</i></li> </ol>	<p>If you are bringing in non-organic poultry you must first have permission from your competent authority before you bring them onto the holding. In GB, permission is granted by the competent authority and we will submit an application on your behalf. You must show us that organic poultry is not available in sufficient numbers.</p> <p>We will need the following details from you to submit to the competent authority:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• why you cannot source them organically</li> <li>• which organic suppliers you have contacted</li> <li>• the number of birds you need</li> <li>• the number of non-organic birds you plan to bring in and when</li> <li>• the name of your suppliers</li> <li>• whether any suppliers will be able to supply you with organic birds in future</li> </ul> <p>A form with all the relevant questions is available on our website or from the Certification Team.</p>
<p><b>3.13.2 Access to the outdoor range</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Poultry must be given access to an outdoor range from as early an age as practically possible. This means whenever physiological and weather conditions allow, except in the case of temporary restrictions or obligations imposed by competent authorities. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(iii)</i></li> </ol>	<p>The age at which your birds can go outside will depend on the time of year and the weather. Access to the range must be given from at least the following ages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 10 weeks for geese</li> <li>• 10 weeks for turkeys</li> <li>• 12 weeks for laying hens and other species</li> </ul>

<p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 14(5)</i></p> <p>2. Access must be given from at least the minimum ages stated in the guidance.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Beyond these ages we would only expect extreme weather conditions to prevent outdoor access.</p> <p>If you give your poultry access to a range before these ages, you may provide a smaller enclosed range to reduce predation risk for a short period of time while they are at higher risk from predation.</p>
<p><i>Why?</i></p> <p>Giving poultry early access to the range encourages birds to use the range more. The range provides birds with plenty of opportunities to express natural behaviours, such as ground pecking and foraging. Improved range use has been shown to decrease the risk of injurious feather pecking.</p>	
Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.13.3 Outdoor stocking density</b></p> <p>The maximum outdoor stocking rate must <b>not</b> exceed 2,500 birds per hectare (4m<sup>2</sup>/bird).</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Annex III</i></p>	
<p><b>3.13.4 Resting the range</b></p> <p>1. You must rest the pasture that the pullets have access to for at least two consecutive months per year and one year in three.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p> <p>2. This requirement will not apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) where birds are on the land for less than one third of the year</li> <li>b) if you have less than 50 birds that are free to roam without a fenced range area.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	

<p><b>3.13.5 Indoor stocking density and perch space</b></p> <p>1. The stocking rate in the house must not exceed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) In fixed housing: 10 birds/m<sup>2</sup>, with a maximum of 21 kg liveweight/m<sup>2</sup></li> <li>b) In mobile housing of less than 150m<sup>2</sup> floor space: 16/m<sup>2</sup>, with a maximum of 30 kg liveweight/m<sup>2</sup></li> </ul> <p>2. You must provide a minimum of 15cm aerial perch space per pullet.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>3.13.6 Number of birds permitted in each house</b></p> <p>You must <b>not</b> have more than 3,000 pullets in a flock.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>EC) 889/2008 Art. 12(3)(e)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.13.7 Artificial light</b></p> <p>1. You may use artificial light to prolong the day length up to 16 hours but the day must end with dusk.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p> <p>2. This does not apply to birds in the brooding phase.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	

### 3.14 Additional standards for poultry breeding flocks

#### What is this chapter about?

The GB Organic Regulation states that organic systems should aim to complete the production cycles of livestock with organically reared animals, but does not yet contain detailed rules for the management of organic poultry breeding flocks. In their absence, the following standards have been adapted from GB Regulation 834/2007 by applying *mutatis mutandis* to provide a certification framework for organic breeding poultry production. Breeding hens must also comply with all the standards for laying hens. You must also comply with the applicable standards in:

- Chapter 1 'General standards for farming and growing'
- Chapter 2 'Standards for organic land and crops'
- Chapter 3 'Standards for organic livestock production'

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.14.1 Registering your breeding flock</b>            You must inform your national government agriculture department that you have a breeding flock.  <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Your national government agriculture department will tell you whether you need to register it under the Poultry Breeding Flocks and Hatcheries Act.</p>
<p><b>3.14.2 Feeding breeding poultry</b>            1. You must provide your poultry breeding flocks with access to feed throughout the day.            2. You must not restrict feed for cockerels.  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(d)(ii)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.14.3 Breeds</b>            The breeds that you choose for table poultry breeding flocks must be suitable for organic, free range management and <b>produce offspring that are hardy and 'slow growing'</b>.  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(c)(iv)</i></p>	<p>Some breeds and strains of chicken are not suitable for organic systems because research has shown them to be predisposed to welfare problems. The breed you use must either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• meet Defra's definition of slow-growing (no more than 45g per day), or</li> <li>• be on the <a href="#">RSPCA's list</a> of welfare-approved free-range broiler breeds</li> </ul>
<p><b>3.14.4 Welfare of hens</b>            You may, where necessary:            a) buy cockerels that have been despurred            b) carry out spur blunting of cockerels  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(viii)</i></p>	<p>We will approve the buying of cockerels that have been despurred or the carrying out of spur blunting if you can demonstrate it is necessary animal welfare.</p>

<p><b>3.14.5 Access to the outdoor range</b></p> <p>1. Poultry must be given access to an outdoor range from as early an age as practically possible. This means whenever physiological and weather conditions allow, except in the case of temporary restrictions or obligations imposed by competent authorities.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(iii)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 14(5)</i></p>	<p>The age at which your birds can go outside will depend on the time of year and the weather. Access to the range must be given from at least the following ages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 10 weeks for geese</li> <li>• 10 weeks for turkeys</li> <li>• 12 weeks for laying hens and other species</li> <li>• The second day after placement into the laying shed for laying hens</li> </ul> <p>Beyond these ages we would only expect extreme weather conditions to prevent outdoor access.</p> <p>If you give your poultry access to a range before these ages, you may provide a smaller enclosed range to reduce predation risk for a short period of time while they are at higher risk from predation.</p>
<p>2. Access must be given from at least the minimum ages stated in the guidance.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>Why?</b></p> <p>Giving poultry early access to the range encourages birds to use the range more. The range provides birds with plenty of opportunities to express natural behaviours, such as ground pecking and foraging. Improved range use has been shown to decrease the risk of injurious feather pecking.</p>	
<p><b>Standards</b></p>	<p><b>Guidance</b></p>
<p><b>3.14.6 Stocking density on the range</b></p> <p>You may have up to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) chickens: 1,000 birds/ha (10m<sup>2</sup>/bird)</li> <li>b) turkeys: 800 birds/ha (12.5m<sup>2</sup>/bird)</li> <li>c) ducks: 1,000 birds/ha (10m<sup>2</sup>/bird)</li> <li>d) geese: 100 birds/ha (100m<sup>2</sup>/bird).</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>3.14.7 Rotation of pasture</b></p> <p>You must rotate the pasture within the life of each flock.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>3.14.8 Number of birds permitted in each house</b></p> <p>The number of birds in each poultry house must <b>not</b> exceed 500 birds.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	

### 3.15 Additional standards for poultry hatcheries

#### What is this chapter about?

The GB Organic Regulation states that organic systems should aim to complete the production cycles of livestock with organically reared animals and that organic livestock products should come from animals that have been raised on organic holdings since birth or hatching ((EC) 834/2007 Art. 5 (i)). However, it does not yet contain detailed rules for the management of organic hatcheries. In their absence, the following standards have been adapted from GB Regulation 834/2007 by applying *mutatis mutandis* to provide a certification framework for organic hatchery production. You must also comply with the applicable standards in:

- Chapter 1 'General standards for farming and growing'
- Chapter 2 'Standards for organic land and crops'
- Chapter 3 'Standards for organic livestock production'

Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.15.1 Registering your hatchery</b>                      You must inform your national government agriculture department that you have a breeding flock.  <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>Your national government agriculture department will tell you whether you need to register it under the Poultry Breeding Flocks and Hatcheries Act.</p>
<p><b>3.15.2 Origin of stock</b>                      If you intend to sell day old chicks as organic, you must:                      a) use fertile hatching eggs from an organically managed breeding flock, and                      b) mark the fertile eggs or the egg trays so that it is clear from which breeding flock they came.  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 5(i)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.15.3 Conversion to organic</b>                      You may have a non-dedicated hatchery for a transitional period only.  <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>You must provide a plan showing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• how and when you will change to a dedicated organic hatchery</li> <li>• how you will make sure you can keep the organic and the non-organic eggs and day old chicks separate, and</li> <li>• how you will ensure that there is no risk that you or anyone else could substitute non-organic eggs/chicks for organic eggs/chicks.</li> </ul>
<p><b>3.15.4 Handling chicks</b>                      1. You must have a system that keeps the handling of chicks to a minimum and reduces the risk of injury.  <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(viii)</i></p>	



<p>2. You must <b>not</b> use automatic systems for the separation and sorting of chicks. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.15.5 Removing chicks from the hatchery</b></p> <p>1. You must <b>not</b> remove chicks from the hatchery until they are dry enough to maintain body temperature. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(ii)</i></p> <p>2. You must examine trays on removal from the hatchery and:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) remove any dead chicks and debris, and</li> <li>b) humanely destroy any sick, deformed or injured chicks. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(viii)</i></li> </ul>	
<p><b>3.15.6 Transporting chicks</b></p> <p>You must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) deliver the day old chicks to the rearing unit within 24 hours of removal from the hatchery</li> <li>b) plan transport so that you minimise waiting times</li> <li>c) maintain a temperature in the holding facilities and during transit that is comfortable for the chicks, and</li> <li>d) use transport boxes that provide: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i) at least 21cm<sup>2</sup>/bird</li> <li>ii) enough height to allow normal posture</li> <li>iii) adequate ventilation, and</li> <li>iv) adequate warmth. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
<p><b>3.15.7 Contingency plan</b></p> <p>You must have a written contingency plan that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) describes the workings of the hatchery, and</li> <li>b) explains how you will make sure that the welfare of the chicks will not be compromised if there is any disruption to services in the hatchery. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></li> </ul>	

### 3.15.8 Records you must keep

1. You must keep the following records:
  - a) the origin of eggs entering the hatchery
  - b) the health status of the breeding flock
  - c) the destination and transport details for chicks leaving the hatchery
  - d) vaccinations given
  - e) the number of chicks hatched each week
  - f) the percentage hatch
  - g) culls and the reasons for culling
  - h) mortality and the causes, and
  - i) the temperature and humidity settings in the setters and the hatcher.

*Soil Association higher standard*



Hatchery records. See standard for more detail.

### 3.16 Additional standards for organic deer

#### What is this chapter about?

The GB Organic Regulation does not contain detailed rules for the management of organic deer. In their absence, the following standards have been adapted from Article 1, 3 and 14 of *EU Organic Regulation 834/2007* and *Article 18, 20 and 38 of (EC) 889/2008* by applying *mutatis mutandis* and supplemented with expert opinion on species-specific best practice to provide a certification framework for organic deer production.

You must also comply with the applicable standards in:

- Chapter 1 'General standards for farming and growing'
- Chapter 2 'Standards for organic land and crops'
- Chapter 3 'Standards for organic livestock production'


Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.16.1 Species and origins of stock (including parkland managed deer)</b></p> <p>1. You may only use:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) red deer</li> <li>b) fallow deer.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p> <p>2. Your stock must be domesticated.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p> <p>3. You must not use:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) wild deer</li> <li>b) other deer species, unless we develop standards for these.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>You can use park deer if you can meet these standards.</p> <p>Domesticated means deer that are farm bred and reared for at least four generations.</p>
<p><b>3.16.2 Producing organic deer</b></p> <p>1. To sell your deer as organic, the animals must be born and raised on an organic holding and managed to full organic standards throughout their lives. Additionally, their dams must be managed to full organic standards from mating.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p> <p>2. You must keep replacement deer to full organic standards from the time you bring them onto your organic holding.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>For general conversion requirements please refer to sections <b>3.1</b> 'Converting your animals to organic' <b>and</b> section <b>3.2</b> 'Sourcing livestock'.</p>

<p>3. You must not sell any of your non-organic replacements as organic.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
Standards	Guidance
<p><b>3.16.3 Deer health and welfare</b></p> <p>You must make sure that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) all your staff have access to your up-to-date herd health plan</li> <li>b) your management of the farm guarantees the safety and welfare of your stock, stockmen and the general public, particularly during the rut and calving seasons, and</li> <li>c) you have provided facilities on your farm for the humane slaughter of both emergency and casualty animals. You must use a named, trained and competent member of staff, a person holding a licence to slaughter, or a veterinary surgeon.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>3.16.4 Prohibited husbandry practices</b></p> <p>You must not:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) routinely remove hard antlers</li> <li>b) remove antlers in velvet</li> <li>c) use artificial insemination (AI) or embryo transfer</li> <li>d) castrate stock</li> <li>e) disbud stock, or</li> <li>f) use immobilon on deer intended for human consumption</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>We will approve the removal of hard antlers only if you can demonstrate that it is necessary for reasons of stock and/or handler safety and welfare.</p>
<p><b>3.16.5 Herd stocking density</b></p> <p>You must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) manage your deer as a herd</li> <li>b) keep to a stocking density that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i) is appropriate for herd behaviour</li> <li>ii) allows effective parasite control, and</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

<p>iii) does not exceed five hinds, plus followers, per hectare. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>														
<p><b>Standards</b></p>	<p><b>Guidance</b></p>													
<p><b>3.16.6 Shelter and fencing</b> You must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) make your tracks and gateways at least 3.5m wide to allow stock to move freely through them</li> <li>b) have perimeter fencing at least 1.8m high to prevent escape</li> <li>c) use fencing that is visible to the stock to prevent injury</li> <li>d) provide shelter from harsh weather conditions</li> <li>e) provide sufficient shade</li> <li>f) provide wallows, and</li> <li>g) provide tree cover or rubbing posts.</li> </ul> <p><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>														
<p><b>3.16.7 Field and fencing management</b> You must not:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) have jump-in points</li> <li>b) keep stags in adjacent fields during the rut.</li> </ul> <p><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>														
<p><b>3.16.8 Use of fields less than two hectares is restricted</b> You must not use fields less than two hectares for grazing, except during collection or convalescence, unless we have agreed this as part of your livestock management plan. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>														
<p><b>3.16.9 Feeding and water provision</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Your deer's diet must comply with standards 3.10.4 - 3.10.6 <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(d)</i></li> <li>2. You must provide your deer with adequate feeding facilities which include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) access to clean fresh water at all times</li> <li>b) good quality feed which meets their nutritional and seasonal requirements particularly to ensure good body condition before winter, and</li> </ul> </li> </ol>	<p>For each deer, this means at least the following trough space:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Red deer</th> <th>Fallow deer</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><b>Hinds/yearlings</b></td> <td>55cm</td> <td>28cm</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Weaned calves</b></td> <td>33cm</td> <td>17cm</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Stags</b></td> <td>75cm</td> <td>38cm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>			Red deer	Fallow deer	<b>Hinds/yearlings</b>	55cm	28cm	<b>Weaned calves</b>	33cm	17cm	<b>Stags</b>	75cm	38cm
	Red deer	Fallow deer												
<b>Hinds/yearlings</b>	55cm	28cm												
<b>Weaned calves</b>	33cm	17cm												
<b>Stags</b>	75cm	38cm												

<p>c) adequate trough space for all deer to feed at the same time. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(d)</i></p>																							
<p><b>3.16.10 Feed composition and daily dry matter intake</b> You must provide your deer with adequate feed and detail the ingredients and quantities you feed to each group of deer in your livestock management plan. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(d)</i></p>	<p>You can use the table below to make sure you feed an adequate daily dry matter intake and to calculate the various feed allowances. This is only a guide. Some animals may eat more or less during different stages of their lives, especially pre and post calving.</p>																						
<p><b>3.16.11 Feeding calves milk and minimum weaning age</b> Calves must be fed natural, organic milk, preferably maternal milk, for a minimum period of 12 weeks <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(d)(vi)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 20(1)</i></p>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Red deer</th> <th>Average daily DMI (kg)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Mature stag</td> <td>3.50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mature hind</td> <td>2.15</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Yearling</td> <td>2.35</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Weaned calf</td> <td>1.65</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Red deer	Average daily DMI (kg)	Mature stag	3.50	Mature hind	2.15	Yearling	2.35	Weaned calf	1.65	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Fallow deer</th> <th>Average daily DMI (kg)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Mature stag</td> <td>1.75</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mature hind</td> <td>1.08</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Yearling</td> <td>1.18</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Weaned calf</td> <td>0.83</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Fallow deer	Average daily DMI (kg)	Mature stag	1.75	Mature hind	1.08	Yearling	1.18	Weaned calf	0.83	
Red deer	Average daily DMI (kg)																						
Mature stag	3.50																						
Mature hind	2.15																						
Yearling	2.35																						
Weaned calf	1.65																						
Fallow deer	Average daily DMI (kg)																						
Mature stag	1.75																						
Mature hind	1.08																						
Yearling	1.18																						
Weaned calf	0.83																						
<p><b>Standards</b></p> <p><b>3.16.12 Conditions for housing deer</b> 1. You may house: a) stock in severe weather conditions b) sick or injured stock c) calves during the winter period after weaning, and d) stock for the final finishing phase, for a maximum of two weeks prior to slaughter. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p><b>Guidance</b></p> <p>If you need to house adult deer you will need to provide details in your livestock management plan for approval by the Certification Team.</p>																						

<p>2. You may house adult deer through the winter if it is a benefit to their health and welfare <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p> <p>3. You must obtain approval from us before you house: a) mature stags b) finishing deer during the winter period. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>3.16.13 Housing requirements</b> You must ensure that your deer housing provides: a) housing for groups of similar ages b) at least five square metres lying area for each 100kg live weight c) safe environment to prevent injury to the deer d) adequate light, ventilation and no draughts e) facilities for rearing orphan calves, and f) refuge for bullied deer, using barriers or partitions with a minimum height of 2m. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>3.16.14 Managing bullied deer</b> You must remove bullied deer to a different pen, and if possible identify and remove the aggressor. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>Standards</b></p>	<p><b>Guidance</b></p>
<p><b>3.16.15 Holding pens, calving and darting</b> You may: a) use short-term holding pens, with at least 0.6m<sup>2</sup> for each 100kg of live weight b) assist with the calving of your hinds c) use darting when needed. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	

<p><b>3.16.16 Handling facilities and practices</b></p> <p>1. Your handling facilities must be good enough to make sure your stock remain safe and well. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(ii)</i></p> <p>2. When handling your animals you must:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>familiarise them with your handling facilities with regular use</li> <li>keep separation of individuals to a minimum, and</li> <li>make sure your handlers are experienced and have received suitable training. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(i)</i></li> </ol>	
<p><b>3.16.17 Handling races</b></p> <p>Barriers must be at least 2m high. The last 20m of the handling race must be solid boarding or close mesh (less than 6cm) and covered in hessian or a similar material. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>3.16.18 Transporting deer is restricted</b></p> <p>1. You must not transport deer for more than eight hours, including the loading and unloading time. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p> <p>2. You must keep any transportation of your deer to an absolute minimum. If you do need to transport them you must use trained and competent people. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	<p>We may give permission to extend the eight hour journey time in exceptional circumstances.</p>
<p><b>3.16.19 Managing deer welfare during transport</b></p> <p>1. When transporting deer you (or the responsible person) must:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>allow the deer access to food at least four hours before the journey</li> <li>provide the deer with fresh, clean water directly before and after the journey</li> <li>allow any stressed deer to rest for up to one hour before loading or unloading them, and</li> <li>provide emergency facilities to cool down heat stressed deer.</li> </ol>	<p> Records of injuries and deaths during transport</p>



*Soil Association higher standard*

2. When transporting deer you must:
  - a) individually pen any irritable or hard-antlered stags
  - b) separate groups of deer based on their previous groups, size and sex
  - c) regularly inspect the deer
  - d) ensure a stocking density of at least 0.6m<sup>2</sup> for each 100kg liveweight, and
  - e) report any injuries or deaths to the driver, abattoir manager and farmer, and record them in the farm records.

*Soil Association higher standard*

### 3.16.20 Vehicle design

You must ensure that the vehicle has:

- a) ramps with a slope of no more than 20 degrees
- b) appropriate ventilation
- c) sufficient bedding to prevent your deer slipping
- d) a ceiling height that allows the deer to stand normally
- e) pen divisions that are solid and at least 2m high, and
- f) no sharp edges or projecting parts that could cause injury.

*Soil Association higher standard*

### 3.16.21 Lairage

1. If you keep your deer in lairage during transit, you must make sure:

- a) there is enough space for the number of deer held
- b) there is enough shelter and bedded lying area for the number of deer held
- c) they have easy access to food and water
- d) the facilities are kept clean, and
- e) there are suitable handling, loading and unloading facilities.

*Soil Association higher standard*

2. Whilst the deer are in lairage you must:

- a) keep them in their social groups, and

<p>b) ensure they are inspected regularly, at least every eight hours, by a competent deer handler. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>3.16.22 Prohibited practices</b>  1. You must not:  a) use goads  b) transport the deer in the same vehicle as other species. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i>  2. You must not transport any of the following to an abattoir:  a) deer under five months old  b) stags in hard antler, unless you individually pen them  c) hinds more than five months in-calf  d) sick, injured or diseased deer  e) males over 24 months old during the rut  f) hinds, with calves under three months old at foot. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>Standards</b></p>	<p><b>Guidance</b></p>
<p><b>3.16.23 Managing deer welfare at slaughter</b>  You must:  a) make sure you meet the terms of the <a href="#">Welfare of Animals at the Time of Killing 2015</a> and (EC) <a href="#">Regulation 1099/2009</a> (on the protection of animals at the time of killing)  b) design and manage your slaughter system to make sure you do not cause your deer unnecessary distress or discomfort  c) keep the pre-slaughter handling of the deer to a minimum  d) only use thoroughly trained and competent people, and  e) only slaughter your deer using the methods noted below. <i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	

<p><b>3.16.24 Shooting deer in the field</b></p> <p>1. When you slaughter deer in the field you must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) use a suitable high velocity rifle and ammunition which meets the legal requirements of the <a href="#">Deer Act 1991</a></li> <li>b) provide a safe backstop for the bullet</li> <li>c) take sensible precautions to ensure public safety, and</li> <li>d) if the kill is not clean, kill the wounded deer straight away, and only continue the cull when the remaining deer are calm.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p> <p>2. You must not shoot deer from greater than 40 metres, unless there are exceptional circumstances.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>3.16.25 Captive bolt stunning</b></p> <p>You may use captive bolt stunning, using your own licensed farmed game handling and processing facility, provided that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) your deer are restrained in a drop floor crush, hydraulic crush or suitable pen</li> <li>b) the stun to stick interval is no more than 60 seconds, and</li> <li>c) after incision of the blood vessels, you perform no further dressing procedures on the deer for at least 20 seconds and until all brain stem reflexes have ceased.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Soil Association higher standard</i></p>	
<p><b>3.16.26 Rules on using abattoirs</b></p> <p>You may use a specialised licensed abattoir with staff who are trained and experienced with deer, provided that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) your deer are slaughtered as soon as possible on arrival, or are rested in a lairage designed for, and only being used by, deer</li> <li>b) your deer are not brought close to any other species in the lairage or abattoir before stunning</li> </ul>	

- c) walls, doors, passages and pens are smooth, without projections that could injure your deer, and are high enough to discourage them from escaping
- d) your deer are restrained in a drop floor crush, hydraulic crush or suitable pen
- e) the time that the last deer in a batch is left is kept to an absolute minimum
- f) the stun to stick interval is no more than 60 seconds, and
- g) after incision of the blood vessels, no further dressing procedures are performed on the deer for at least 20 seconds and until all brain stem reflexes have ceased.

*Soil Association higher standard*

## 3.17 Beekeeping

### What is this chapter about?

Organic beekeeping aims to optimise the health of the bees and the integrity of their products through:

- your hive management and the treatments you apply
- the quality of the foraging area, and
- the way you harvest, process and store the honey.

You must also comply with the applicable standards in:

- Chapter 1 'General standards for farming and growing'
- Chapter 2 'Standards for organic land and crops'
- Chapter 3 'Standards for organic livestock production'
- Chapter 6 'Specific standards for food and drink'

### Standards

### Guidance

#### 3.17.1 Producing organic bees and bee products

You can sell bees and bee products as organic when you have kept them to full organic standards for at least 12 months.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 38(3)*

Bees and bee products must be added to your trading schedule before you can sell them as organic.

#### 3.17.2 Sourcing bees

1. When choosing your breed or strain, you must give preference to local ecotypes of *Apis mellifera*.
2. You must choose breeds or strains that:
  - a) are suitable to local conditions
  - b) avoid the need for the mutilation of animals
  - c) have vitality and resistance to disease.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(c)(iv) &(e)(i)*

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 8*


#### 3.17.3 Establishing a new apiary


You must establish your organic apiaries by bringing in colonies or swarms from organic units.


*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(a)(i)*

#### 3.17.4 Converting an existing apiary

1. You may convert your existing hives, but you must keep your bees to these standards for at least 12 months before you can sell any of their products as organic.

<p>2. During this time you must replace their comb with organic wax. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 38(3)(5)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.17.5 Increasing your stocks</b> You must increase your stocks by dividing your own colonies or bringing in colonies or swarms from other organic units. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(a)(i)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.17.6 Bringing in non-organic replacements</b> 1. You may replace a maximum of 10% per year of your queen bees and swarms with non-organic queen bees and swarms, only when organic stock is not available in sufficient number. These bees will not need to go through a conversion period. 2. You must place them in hives with comb or foundation from organic production. <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 9(5); Art. 38(4)</i></p>	<p>You must demonstrate that suitable organic stock is not available.</p>
<p><b>3.17.7 Exceptional rules due to catastrophic circumstances</b> 1. With the approval of your competent authority, in the case of high mortality caused by health or catastrophic circumstances, you may renew or reconstitute your apiaries with non-organic bees when organic bees are not available. 2. Upon approval by the competent authority you must keep documentary evidence of the use of this exception. <i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 22(2)(f)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 47(b)</i></p>	<p>In GB, the Certification Team can submit a request to your competent authority, Defra, on your behalf. This permission needs to be in place before you bring in non-organic bees.</p>
<p><b>3.17.8 Keeping organic and non-organic bees</b> 1. You may keep organic and non-organic apiaries on the same holding only where necessary for the purpose of pollination, and for a limited period of time. 2. You must demonstrate that the pollination services of the non-organic apiaries are necessary to initiate or maintain organic production on your holding due to climatic, geographical or structural constraints.</p>	<p> Records of keeping non-organic bees</p>

<p>3. You must manage the non-organic apiaries to all of these standards, with the exception of siting of apiaries.</p> <p>4. You must not sell products from non-organic apiaries as organic.</p> <p>5. You must keep records as evidence of the use of this provision.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 22(2)(a)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 41</i></p>	
<p><b>3.17.9 Preventing disease</b></p> <p>1. You must be able to show that you take preventative measures to limit your bee health problems.</p> <p>2. Disease prevention must be based on:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) breed and strain selection</li> <li>b) husbandry management practice</li> <li>c) high quality feed, and</li> <li>d) adequate and appropriate hives, maintained in hygienic conditions.</li> </ol> <p>3. You must draw up a health plan to show how you will build health and reduce disease. This must be tailored to suit your own apiaries and should allow you to minimise your use of veterinary medicines.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(e)(i)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 63(1)(b)</i></p>	<p>If health problems occur you must review your management, take appropriate action and monitor its effectiveness. This must be detailed in your livestock management plan.</p> <p>Preventative measures include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• renewing the queens regularly</li> <li>• regularly inspecting your hives to detect health problems</li> <li>• disinfecting materials and equipment regularly</li> <li>• destroying contaminated material</li> <li>• regularly renewing beeswax, and</li> <li>• leaving enough reserves of honey and pollen in your hives.</li> </ul>
<p><b>3.17.10 Treating disease</b></p> <p>1. If your colonies become sick or infested you must treat them immediately, and, if necessary, place the colonies in isolation apiaries.</p> <p>2. Veterinary medicinal products may be used in organic beekeeping provided they are legally authorised for their intended use in the country of production.</p> <p>3. If you give veterinary treatment to you bees you must:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) clearly identify treated colonies by hive</li> <li>b) record the type of product and its active ingredient, together with details of the diagnosis, the dose, the method of administration, the duration of the treatment and the legal withdrawal period</li> </ol>	<p>It is your responsibility to ensure that any treatments and veterinary products you use are licensed or have veterinary approval for their intended purpose.</p> <p> Records of veterinary treatments used</p>

<p>c) provide us with this information before the bee products are marketed as organic.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(e)(ii)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 24(2)(3); Art. 25(4)(5); Art. 77; Art. 78(3)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.17.11 Treated colonies</b> If you treat any colonies with chemically synthesised allopathic veterinary treatments, except those we allow against Varroa mite, you must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) put them in isolation apiaries during the treatment period</li> <li>b) replace all the wax with organically produced wax, and</li> <li>c) put the treated colony into a 12 month conversion period, starting from the date of treatment.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 25(7)(8)</i></p>	<p>You must have an effective system in place to ensure that treated bees or their products are not sold as organic during the 12 month conversion period. This needs to be detailed in your livestock management plan.</p>
<p><b>3.17.12 Treatment of Varroa mite infestation</b> If you have an infestation of <i>Varroa destructor</i>, you may:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) destroy the male brood to contain the infestation</li> <li>b) use formic acid, lactic acid, acetic acid and oxalic acid</li> <li>c) use menthol, thymol, eucalyptol or camphor, and</li> <li>d) use veterinary treatments which are compulsory under national or community legislation.</li> </ul> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 25(3)(5)(6)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.17.13 Welfare of bees</b> You must <b>not</b> mutilate bees, for example, clipping the wings of the queen bee.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 18(3)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.17.14 Feeding bees</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. You must leave your colonies with enough honey and pollen reserves to survive the winter.</li> <li>2. You may only feed your bees when the survival of the hives is endangered due to climatic conditions.</li> <li>3. You may only feed them with organic honey, organic sugar or organic sugar syrup.</li> <li>4. You must record the type of feed, dates, quantities and the hives that you artificially feed.</li> </ol>	<p>To prevent the risk of disease, feeding your bees with honey is not recommended except from your own disease-free colonies.</p> <p> Records of any supplementary feed given</p>



*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 19(3); Art. 78(2)*

### 3.17.15 Exceptional feeding rules due to catastrophic circumstances

1. With the approval of your competent authority, in the case of long-lasting exceptional weather conditions or catastrophic circumstances which hamper the nectar or honeydew production, you may feed your bees with organic honey, organic sugar or organic sugar syrup.
2. Upon approval by the competent authority you must keep documentary evidence of the use of this exception.

*(EC) 834/2007 Art. 22(2)(f)*

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 47(d)*

In GB, the Certification Team can submit a request to the competent authority on your behalf. This permission needs to be in place before you feed your bees.

To prevent the risk of disease, feeding your bees with honey is not recommended except from your own disease-free colonies.

### 3.17.16 Designated regions

Your certification body, in line with any National Authority requirements, may have identified regions or areas where organic beekeeping is not practical. You must not site or manage your apiaries in these areas.

*(EC) 889/2008 Art. 13(2)*

### 3.17.17 Siting your apiaries

1. When you are siting your apiaries you must ensure:
  - a) Your bees have access to water and enough natural nectar, honeydew and pollen sources to sustain your colonies.
  - b) Nectar and pollen sources within 3km of your apiary consist essentially of:
    - i) organic crops
    - ii) uncultivated areas with natural vegetation, and
    - iii) crops that have only been managed with low environmental impact methods and which cannot significantly affect the organic description of beekeeping.
  - c) Your bees are kept far enough from sources that may lead to the contamination of beekeeping products or to the poor health of bees. You must provide us with:

Low environmental impact methods are those that are part of a recognised scheme for:

- ways of using agricultural land which are compatible with the protection and improvement of the environment, the landscape and its features, natural resources, the soil and genetic diversity
- an environmentally-favourable extensification of farming and management of low-intensity pasture systems
- the conservation of high nature-value farmed environments which are under threat
- the upkeep of the landscape and historical features on agricultural land
- the use of environmental planning in farming practice.

Potential sources of contamination and poor health include urban centres, motorways, industrial areas, waste dumps, waste incinerators and areas of cropping where pesticides are used. For example, insecticides such as neonicotinoids can be a source of contamination and can also affect bee health.

<p>i) a map on an appropriate scale listing the location of hives, and</p> <p>ii) appropriate documentation and evidence, including suitable analyses if necessary, that the areas accessible to your colonies meet the conditions required in these standards.</p> <p>2. If you have put your hives in areas where flowering is not taking place or if they are dormant, you do not need to meet the above conditions for siting apiaries for this time.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(d)(ii)</i>  <i>EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(ix)</i>  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 13(1)</i>  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 78(1)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.17.18 Hive management</b></p> <p>You must:</p> <p>a) identify each of your hives individually</p> <p>b) inform us when you move your apiaries, within a timescale we have approved and agreed with you, and</p> <p>c) record all details of your hive management operations, such as removing supers and extracting honey.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 78(4)(6)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.17.19 Hive materials</b></p> <p>Your hives must be made mainly of natural materials which give no risk of contaminating either the environment, the bee products or the bees themselves.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>(EC) 834/2007 Art. 14(1)(b)(x)</i>  <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 13(3)</i></p>	
<p><b>3.17.20 Cleaning hives</b></p> <p>You may only use:</p> <p>a) natural products in the hives, such as propolis, wax and plant oils</p> <p>b) physical cleaning treatments such as steam or direct flame</p>	

<p>c) rodenticides only in traps and appropriate products, listed in standard 2.6.3 to protect frames, hives and combs against pests, and</p> <p>d) appropriate substances listed in standard 1.12.2 for cleaning and disinfecting your beekeeping materials, buildings, utensils or products.</p> <p><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 13(5); Art. 23(4); Art. 25(1)(2); Annex VII</i></p>	
<p><b>3.17.21 Sourcing wax</b></p> <p>1. You must use organic wax:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for all your new foundations</li> <li><b>to replace combs during a hive's conversion period, and</b></li> <li>to set up a new hive or installation.</li> </ol> <p>2. In the case of new installations or during the conversion period, if organic wax is not available, you may use non-organic wax from cappings where you can prove it is free from contamination.</p> <p><i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 13(4); Art. 38(5)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 44</i></p>	<p>You must demonstrate that organic wax is not available.</p>
<p><b>3.17.22 Extraction</b></p> <p>1. You must make sure you adequately extract, process and store your bee products.</p> <p>2. You must not:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>use chemical synthetic repellents during honey extraction operations</li> <li>destroy bees in the combs to harvest bee products, or</li> <li>extract honey from combs that contain brood.</li> </ol> <p><i>(EC)834/2007 Art. 14(1)(xi)</i> <i>(EC) 889/2008 Art. 13(6)(7); Art. 78(5)</i></p>	